Computerized Embroidery and Sewing Machine

Operation Manual

Product Code: 885-U01/U04

Be sure to read this document before using the machine. We recommend that you keep this document nearby for future reference.
IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

Please read these safety instructions before attempting to use the machine.

⚠️ DANGER ⚠️ - To reduce the risk of electric shock:

1 Always unplug the machine from the electrical outlet immediately after using, when cleaning, when making any user servicing adjustments mentioned in this manual, or if you are leaving the machine unattended.

⚠️ WARNING ⚠️ - To reduce the risk of burns, fire, electric shock, or injury to persons.

2 Always unplug the machine from the electrical outlet when making any adjustments mentioned in the instruction manual:

• To unplug the machine, switch the machine to the symbol “O” position to turn it off, then grasp the plug and pull it out of the electrical outlet. Do not pull on the cord.
• Plug the machine directly into the electrical outlet. Do not use an extension cord.
• Always unplug your machine if the power is cut.

3 Electrical Hazards:

• This machine should be connected to an AC power source within the range indicated on the rating label. Do not connect it to a DC power source or inverter. If you are not sure what kind of power source you have, contact a qualified electrician.
• This machine is approved for use in the country of purchase only.

4 Never operate this machine if it has a damaged cord or plug, if it is not working properly, if it has been dropped or damaged, or water is spilled on the unit. Return the machine to the nearest authorized dealer or service center for examination, repair, electrical or mechanical adjustment.

• While the machine is stored or in use if you notice anything unusual, such as an odor, heat, discoloration or deformation, stop using the machine and immediately unplug the power cord.
• When transporting the sewing machine, be sure to carry it by its handle. Lifting the sewing machine by any other part may damage the machine or result in the machine falling, which could cause injuries.
• When lifting the sewing machine, be careful not to make any sudden or careless movements, otherwise you may injure your back or knees.

5 Always keep your work area clear:

• Never operate the machine with any air openings blocked. Keep ventilation openings of the sewing machine and foot control free from the build up of lint, dust, and loose cloth.
• Do not store objects on the foot controller.
• Do not use extension cords. Plug the machine directly into the electrical outlet.
• Never drop or insert any object into any opening.
• Do not operate where aerosol (spray) products are being used or where oxygen is being administered.
• Do not use the machine near a heat source, such as a stove or iron; otherwise, the machine, power cord or garment being sewn may ignite, resulting in fire or an electric shock.
• Do not place this sewing machine on an unstable surface, such as an unsteady or slanted table, otherwise the sewing machine may fall, resulting in injuries.
Special care is required when sewing:

- **Always** pay close attention to the needle. Do not use bent or damaged needles.
- Keep fingers away from **all** moving parts. Special care is required around the machine needle.
- Switch the sewing machine to the symbol “O” position to turn it off when making any adjustments in the needle area.
- **Do not** use a damaged or incorrect needle plate, as it could cause the needle to break.
- **Do not** push or pull the fabric when sewing, and follow careful instruction when freehand stitching so that you do not deflect the needle and cause it to break.

This machine is **not** a toy:

- Your close attention is necessary when the machine is used by or near children.
- The plastic bag that this sewing machine was supplied in should be kept out of the reach of children or disposed of. Never allow children to play with the bag due to the danger of suffocation.
- Do not use outdoors.

For a longer service life:

- When storing this machine, avoid direct sunlight and high humidity locations. Do not use or store the machine near a space heater, iron, halogen lamp, or other hot objects.
- Use only neutral soaps or detergents to clean the case. Benzene, thinner, and scouring powders can damage the case and machine, and should never be used.
- Always consult the operation manual when replacing or installing any assemblies, the presser feet, needle, or other parts to assure correct installation.

For repair or adjustment:

- If the Light unit (light-emitting diode) is damaged, it must be replaced by authorized dealer.
- In the event a malfunction occurs or adjustment is required, first follow the troubleshooting table in the back of the operation manual to inspect and adjust the machine yourself. If the problem persists, please consult your local authorized Brother dealer.

Use this machine only for its intended use as described in this manual.
Use accessories recommended by the manufacturer as contained in this manual.
The contents of this manual and specifications of this product are subject to change without notice.
For additional product information, visit our web site at www.brother.com
SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS
This machine is intended for household use.

FOR USERS IN COUNTRIES EXCEPT EUROPEAN COUNTRIES
This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety. Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the appliance.

FOR USERS IN EUROPEAN COUNTRIES
This appliance can be used by children aged from 8 years and above and persons with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities or lack of experience and knowledge if they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance in a safe way and understand the hazards involved. Children shall not play with the appliance. Cleaning and user maintenance shall not be made by children without supervision.

FOR USERS IN THE UK, EIRE, MALTA AND CYPRUS ONLY

IMPORTANT
• In the event of replacing the plug fuse, use a fuse approved by ASTA to BS 1362, i.e. carrying the mark, rating as marked on plug.
• Always replace the fuse cover. Never use plugs with the fuse cover omitted.
• If the available electrical outlet is not suitable for the plug supplied with this equipment, you should contact your authorized dealer to obtain the correct lead.
# Contents

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS** ................................................................. 1

**Introduction** ........................................................................................................ 9

**Sewing Machine Features** .................................................................................. 9

**Accessories** .......................................................................................................... 10

- Included accessories .............................................................................................. 10
- Optional accessories .............................................................................................. 12

**Names of Machine Parts and Their Functions** .................................................... 13

- Front view ............................................................................................................. 13
- Needle and presser foot section ............................................................................. 14
- Right-side/rear view .............................................................................................. 14
- Operation buttons .................................................................................................. 15
- Operation panel ...................................................................................................... 16

**GETTING READY** ................................................................................................ 17

**Turning the Machine On/Off** .............................................................................. 18

- Power supply precautions ..................................................................................... 18
- Turning on the machine ....................................................................................... 19
- Turning off the machine ....................................................................................... 19

**LCD (Liquid Crystal Display) Operation** ............................................................ 20

- Viewing the LCD .................................................................................................. 20
- Changing the machine settings .......................................................................... 21
- Checking machine operating procedures ......................................................... 23

**Winding/Installing the Bobbin** ............................................................................ 25

- Bobbin precautions ............................................................................................... 25
- Winding the bobbin .............................................................................................. 25
- Installing the bobbin ............................................................................................. 29

**Upper Threading** .................................................................................................. 31

- About the spool of thread .................................................................................... 31
- Threading the upper thread .................................................................................. 32
- Threading the needle ............................................................................................ 34
- Threading the needle manually (without using the needle threader) ............... 35
- Using the twin needle ......................................................................................... 36
- Pulling up the bobbin thread ................................................................................ 39

**Replacing the Needle** .......................................................................................... 40

- Needle precautions .............................................................................................. 40
- Needle types and their uses ............................................................................... 41
- Checking the needle ............................................................................................ 42
- Replacing the needle ......................................................................................... 42

**Replacing the Presser Foot** ................................................................................. 44

- Presser foot precautions ..................................................................................... 44
- Replacing the presser foot .................................................................................. 44
- Removing and attaching the presser foot holder ............................................. 46

**Sewing Cylindrical Pieces** .................................................................................. 47

- Free-arm sewing ................................................................................................. 47

**SEWING BASICS** .................................................................................................. 49

**Sewing** ................................................................................................................. 50

- General sewing procedure .................................................................................. 50
- Selecting stitching ............................................................................................... 51
- Positioning the fabric .......................................................................................... 52
- Starting to sew ..................................................................................................... 53
- Securing the stitching .......................................................................................... 53
- Cutting the thread ............................................................................................... 56

**Setting the Stitch** .................................................................................................. 58

- Adjusting the stitch width ................................................................................... 58
- Adjusting the stitch length .................................................................................. 59
- Adjusting the thread tension ............................................................................... 59
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Decorative Stitching</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fagoting</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scallop stitching</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smocking</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shell tuck stitching</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joining</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heirloom stitching</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sewing the Various Built-in Decorative Patterns</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sewing beautiful patterns</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the pattern size</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the stitch density</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the length for satin stitches</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shifting patterns</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combining patterns</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saving patterns</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Realigning the pattern</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Designing a Pattern (My Custom Stitch)</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drawing a sketch of the pattern</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entering the pattern data</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examples of designs</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Successful Embroidering</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What to prepare</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embroidery step by step</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attaching the Embroidery Foot</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attaching the embroidery foot</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removing the embroidery foot</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attaching the Embroidery Unit</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embroidery unit precautions</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attaching the embroidery unit</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removing the embroidery unit</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preparing the Fabric</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attaching an optional stabilizer material to the fabric</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the fabric in the embroidery frame</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attaching the Embroidery Frame</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attaching the embroidery frame</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removing the embroidery frame</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting Embroidery Patterns</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copyright information</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embroidery pattern types</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD (liquid crystal display) operation</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting an embroidery pattern</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting characters</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting a frame pattern</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using an embroidery card (sold separately)</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embroidering</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sewing attractive finishes</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embroidering a pattern</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appliquéuing</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing Patterns</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the layout</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the thread tension</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the alternate bobbin case (with no color on the screw)</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resewing</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thread runs out partway through a design</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stopping while embroidering</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the Memory Function</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embroidery data precautions</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saving patterns</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transferring embroidery patterns from the computer to machine</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX

Care and Maintenance .................................................................184
  Restrictions on oiling.................................................................184
  Precautions on storing the machine ...........................................184
  Cleaning the machine surface ..................................................184
  Cleaning the race .......................................................................184

Troubleshooting .................................................................186
  Frequent troubleshooting topics ...................................................186
  Upper thread tightened up ..........................................................186
  Tangled thread on wrong side of fabric .......................................187
  Incorrect thread tension .............................................................189
  Fabric is caught in the machine and cannot be removed ...............190
  When the thread became tangled under the bobbin winder seat .................................................................................193
  List of symptoms .........................................................................195
  Error messages ............................................................................201
  Adjusting the LCD .......................................................................204
  Operation beep ...........................................................................204
  Canceling the operation beep .....................................................205

Upgrading Your Machine’s Software Using USB Media .................................................206

Index .........................................................................................207
Introduction

Thank you for purchasing this sewing machine. Before using this sewing machine, carefully read the “IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS” (page 1), and then study this manual for the correct operation of the various functions. In addition, after you have finished reading this manual, store it where it can quickly be accessed for future reference.

Sewing Machine Features

1. **Simple bobbin-winding**
   The bobbin can quickly and easily be wound with thread (page 25).

2. **Built-in stitches**
   You can select from the built-in stitches available, including utility stitches and decorative stitches (page 70).

3. **Quick-set bobbin**
   You can start sewing without pulling up the bobbin thread (page 29).

4. **Automatic thread cutting**
   The thread can be cut automatically after sewing (page 62).

5. **Embroidery**
   You can embroider built-in embroidery patterns, characters, framed decorations, and designs from optional embroidery cards (page 143).

6. **Knee lifter**
   Use the knee lifter to raise and lower the presser foot with your knee, leaving both hands free to handle the fabric (page 67).
After opening the box, check that the following accessories are included. If any item is missing or damaged, contact your dealer.

**Note**
(For U.S.A. only)

- Foot controller: Model T
  This foot controller can be used on the machine with product code: 885-U01/U04. The product code is mentioned on the machine rating plate.

- The screw for the presser foot holder is available through your authorized dealer.
  (Part code: 132730-122)

- The organized accessory tray is available through your authorized dealer.
  (Part code: XC4489-051)

### Included accessories

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14.* 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38.

*75/11 2 needles
90/14 2 needles
90/14 2 needles: Ball point needle
  (gold colored)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Part Name</th>
<th>Part Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Americas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Buttonhole foot “A”</td>
<td>XC2691-023</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Overcasting foot “G”</td>
<td>XC3098-031</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Monogramming foot “N”</td>
<td>XD0810-031</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Zipper foot “I”</td>
<td>X59370-021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Zigzag foot “J” (on machine)</td>
<td>XZ5134-001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Blind stitch foot “R”</td>
<td>XE2650-001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Button fitting foot “M”</td>
<td>XE2643-001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Stitch guide foot “P”</td>
<td>SA160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Adjustable zipper/piping foot</td>
<td>SA161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Non stick foot</td>
<td>SA114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Open toe foot</td>
<td>SA186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Seam ripper</td>
<td>XZ5082-001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Bobbin (4)</td>
<td>SA156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Needle set</td>
<td>X58358-021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Twin needle</td>
<td>X59296-121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Cleaning brush</td>
<td>X59476-021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Eyelet punch</td>
<td>XZ5051-001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Screwdriver (large)</td>
<td>XC8349-021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Screwdriver (small)</td>
<td>X55468-021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Spool cap (large)</td>
<td>130012-024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Spool cap (medium) (2)</td>
<td>XE1372-001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Spool cap (small)</td>
<td>130013-124</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Part Name</th>
<th>Part Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Americas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Extra spool pin</td>
<td>XC4654-151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Spool net</td>
<td>XA5523-020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Foot controller</td>
<td>XZ5098-001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Operation manual</td>
<td>XE6389-201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Quick reference guide</td>
<td>XD1237-221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Embroidery foot “Q”</td>
<td>XD0474-151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Embroidery set (large)</td>
<td>SA444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Embroidery set (extra large</td>
<td>SA445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(multi-position)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Embroidery bobbin thread (white)</td>
<td>SA-EBT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Alternate bobbin case</td>
<td>X8167-551</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(no color on the screw)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Knee lifter</td>
<td>XA6941-052</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Grid sheet set</td>
<td>XC4549-020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Scissors</td>
<td>XC1807-121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Hard case</td>
<td>X39701-052</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Accessory bag</td>
<td>XC4487-021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Disc-shaped screwdriver</td>
<td>XC1074-051</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Optional accessories

The following are available as optional accessories to be purchased separately.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Part Name</th>
<th>Part Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Embroidery bobbin thread (white)</td>
<td>SA-EBT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EBT-CEBN: X81164-001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Embroidery bobbin thread (black)</td>
<td>SAEBT999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EBT-CEBN: X5520-001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Embroidery card</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Embroidery set (small)</td>
<td>SA442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H 2 cm × W 6 cm</td>
<td>EF82: XG2147-001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(H 1 inch × W 2 1/2 inches)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Embroidery set (medium)</td>
<td>SA443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H 10 cm × W 10 cm</td>
<td>EF83: XG2108-001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(H 4 inches × W 4 inches)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Water soluble stabilizer</td>
<td>SA520</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>BM5: XE0615-001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Stabilizer material for embroidery</td>
<td>SA519</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>BM3: XE0806-001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Wide table</td>
<td>SA551</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WT5: XC9567-222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Walking foot</td>
<td>SA140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F033N: XC2214-052</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Quilting foot</td>
<td>SA129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F005N: XC1948-052</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>1/4 inch quilting foot</td>
<td>SA125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F001N: XC1944-052</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Side cutter &quot;S&quot;</td>
<td>SA177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F054: XC3879-152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Quilting guide</td>
<td>SA132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F016N: XC2215-052</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>1/4 inch quilting foot with guide</td>
<td>SA185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F057: XC7416-252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Circular attachment</td>
<td>SACIRC1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CIRC1: XE3527-001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Memo**

- To obtain optional accessories or parts, contact your sales representative or the nearest authorized service center.
- All specifications are correct at the time of printing. The part codes are subject to change without notice.
- Visit your nearest authorized retailer for a complete listing of optional accessories available for your machine.
The names of the various parts of the sewing machine and their functions are described below. Before using the sewing machine, carefully read these descriptions to learn the names of the machine parts.

Front view

1. **Thread guide plate**
   - Pass the thread under the thread guide plate.

2. **Thread guide cover**
   - Pass the thread behind the thread guide cover when threading the upper thread.

3. **Spool pin**
   - Place a spool of thread on the spool pin.

4. **Bobbin winding thread guide and pretension disk**
   - Pass the thread under this thread guide and around the pretension disk when winding the bobbin thread.

5. **Top cover**
   - Open the top cover to place the spool of thread on the spool pin.

6. **Bobbin winder**
   - Use the bobbin winder when winding the bobbin.

7. **Operation panel**
   - From the operation panel, stitch settings can be viewed and edited, and operations for using the machine can be displayed (page 16).

8. **Knee lifter mounting slot**
   - Insert the knee lifter into the knee lifter mounting slot.

9. **Embroidery unit connector slot**
   - Plug in the connector for the embroidery unit.

10. **Presser foot lever**
    - Raise and lower the presser foot lever to raise and lower the presser foot.

11. **Operation buttons and sewing speed controller**
    - Use these buttons and the slide to operate the sewing machine (page 15).

12. **Flat bed attachment**
    - Insert the accessories tray into the accessory compartment of the flat bed attachment. Remove the flat bed attachment when sewing cylindrical pieces such as sleeve cuffs.

13. **Thread cutter**
    - Pass the threads through the thread cutter to cut them.

14. **Needle threader lever**
    - Use the needle threader lever to thread the needle.

15. **Thread take-up lever check window**
    - Look through the window to check the position of the take-up lever.
Needle and presser foot section

1. **Buttonhole lever**
   The buttonhole lever is used with the one-step buttonhole foot to create buttonholes.

2. **Thread guide disk**
   Pass the thread through the thread guide disk when using the needle threader to thread the needle.

3. **Needle bar thread guide**
   Pass the upper thread through the needle bar thread guide.

4. **Needle plate**
   The needle plate is marked with guides to help sew straight seams.

5. **Needle plate cover**
   Remove the needle plate cover to clean the bobbin case and race.

6. **Bobbin cover**
   Open the bobbin cover to set the bobbin.

7. **Feed dogs**
   The feed dogs feed the fabric in the sewing direction.

8. **Presser foot**
   The presser foot applies pressure consistently on the fabric as sewing takes place. Attach the appropriate presser foot for the selected stitch.

9. **Presser foot holder**
   The presser foot is attached onto the presser foot holder.

Right-side/rear view

1. **Handle**
   Carry the sewing machine by its handle when transporting the machine.

2. **Handwheel**
   Turn the handwheel toward you to raise and lower the needle. The handwheel should be turned towards you (counterclockwise).

3. **Embroidery card slot**
   Insert the embroidery card.

4. **USB port (for a USB flash drive (USB flash memory))**
   In order to import patterns from a USB flash drive (USB flash memory), plug the USB media directly into the USB port.

5. **Air vent**
   The air vent allows the air surrounding the motor to circulate. Do not cover the air vent while the sewing machine is being used.

6. **Main power switch**
   Use the main power switch to turn the sewing machine ON and OFF.

7. **Foot controller jack**
   Insert the plug on the end of the foot controller cable into the foot controller jack.

8. **Power supply jack**
   Insert the plug on the power cord into the power supply jack.

9. **Feed dog position switch**
   Use the feed dog position switch to lower the feed dogs.

10. **Presser foot pressure dial**
    Use the presser foot pressure dial to adjust the amount of pressure that the presser foot applies.

11. **Presser foot lever**
    Raise and lower the presser foot lever to raise and lower the presser foot.

**Memo**

- Refer to pages 13 through 16 while you are learning to use your machine.
Operation buttons

The operation buttons help you to easily perform various basic sewing machine operations.

1. **“Start/Stop” button**
   Press the “Start/Stop” button to start or stop sewing. The machine sews at a slow speed at the beginning of sewing while the button is pressed. When sewing is stopped, the needle is lowered in the fabric. For details, refer to “Starting to sew” (page 53). The button changes color according to the machine’s operation mode.
   - **Green:** The machine is ready to sew or is sewing.
   - **Red:** The machine can not sew.
   - **Orange:** The machine is winding the bobbin thread, or the bobbin winder shaft is moved to the right side.

2. **“Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button**
   Press the “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button to sew reverse stitches or reinforcement stitches. Reverse stitches are sewn by keeping the button pressed down to sew in the opposite direction. Reinforcement stitches are sewn by sewing 3 to 5 stitches on top of each other. For details, refer to “Securing the stitching” (page 55).

3. **“Needle Position” button**
   Press the “Needle Position” button to raise or lower the needle. Pressing the button twice sews one stitch.

4. **“Thread Cutter” button**
   Press the “Thread Cutter” button after sewing is stopped to cut both the upper and the bobbin threads. For details, refer to “Cutting the thread” (page 56).

5. **Sewing speed controller**
   Slide the sewing speed controller to adjust the sewing speed.

### Note
- **Do not press “Thread Cutter” button** if there is no fabric under the presser foot or while the machine is sewing, otherwise damage to the machine may occur.
- **When cutting thread thicker than #30, nylon thread or other special threads, use the thread cutter on the side of the machine.** For details, refer to “Using the thread cutter” (page 57).

---

**CAUTION**
- **Do not press “Thread Cutter” button** after the threads have already been cut, otherwise the needle may break, the threads may become tangled or damage to the machine may occur.
Operation panel

The front operation panel has an LCD (liquid crystal display) and operation keys.

1  LCD (liquid crystal display) (touch panel)
   Selected pattern settings and messages are displayed. Touch the keys displayed on the LCD to perform operations.
   For details, refer to “LCD (Liquid Crystal Display) Operation” (page 20).

2  Back key
   Press to return to the previous screen.

3  Previous page key
   Displays the previous screen when there are items that are not displayed on the LCD.

4  Next page key
   Displays the next screen when there are items that are not displayed on the LCD.

5  Memory key
   Press to enter character embroidery, combined stitch patterns, My Custom Stitch patterns, etc into the sewing machine memory.

6  Utility stitch key
   Press this key to select a utility stitch or decorative stitch or to design a stitch pattern using the My Custom Stitch function.

7  Embroidery key
   Press this key to sew embroidery.

8  Settings key
   Press to set the needle stop position, the buzzer sound, and more.

9  Sewing machine help key
   Press to get help on using the sewing machine. Displays simple explanations of setting upper thread / bobbin winding / setting bobbin thread / needle replacement / embroidery unit attachment / embroidery frame attachment / embroidery foot attachment / presser foot replacement.
The various preparations required before starting to sew are described in this chapter.

**Turning the Machine On/Off** ................................................................. 18
  Power supply precautions ................................................................. 18
  Turning on the machine ................................................................. 19
  Turning off the machine ............................................................... 19

**LCD (Liquid Crystal Display) Operation** ........................................... 20
  Viewing the LCD ................................................................. 20
  Changing the machine settings ................................................ 21
  Checking machine operating procedures .................................. 23

**Winding/Installing the Bobbin** ............................................................ 25
  Bobbin precautions ................................................................. 25
  Winding the bobbin ................................................................. 25
  Installing the bobbin ................................................................. 29

**Upper Threading** .................................................................................. 31
  About the spool of thread ............................................................... 31
  Threading the upper thread .......................................................... 32
  Threading the needle ................................................................. 34
  Threading the needle manually (without using the needle threader) .... 35
  Using the twin needle ................................................................. 36
  Pulling up the bobbin thread ....................................................... 39

**Replacing the Needle** .......................................................................... 40
  Needle precautions ................................................................. 40
  Needle types and their uses .......................................................... 41
  Checking the needle ................................................................. 42
  Replacing the needle ................................................................. 42

**Replacing the Presser Foot** .................................................................. 44
  Presser foot precautions ............................................................... 44
  Replacing the presser foot ........................................................... 44
  Removing and attaching the presser foot holder ......................... 46

**Sewing Cylindrical Pieces** ................................................................. 47
  Free-arm sewing ........................................................................... 47
Turning the Machine On/Off

This section explains how to turn the sewing machine on and off.

Power supply precautions

Be sure to observe the following precautions concerning the power supply.

**WARNING**

- Use only regular household electricity for the power source. Using other power sources may result in fire, electric shock, or damage to the machine.
- Make sure that the plugs on the power cord are firmly inserted into the electrical outlet and the power supply jack on the machine.
- Do not insert the plug on the power cord into an electrical outlet that is in poor condition.
- Turn off the main power and remove the plug in the following circumstances:
  - When you are away from the machine
  - After using the machine
  - When the power fails during use
  - When the machine does not operate correctly due to a bad connection or a disconnection
  - During electrical storms

**CAUTION**

- Use only the power cord included with this machine.
- Do not use extension cords or multi-plug adapters with many other appliances plugged into them. Fire or electric shock may result.
- Do not touch the plug with wet hands. Electric shock may result.
- When unplugging the machine, always turn off the main power first. Always grasp the plug to remove it from the outlet. Pulling on the cord may damage the cord, or lead to fire or electric shock.
- Do not allow the power cord to be cut, damaged, modified, forcefully bent, pulled, twisted, or bundled. Do not place heavy objects on the cord. Do not subject the cord to heat. These things may damage the cord and cause fire or electric shock. If the cord or plug is damaged, take the machine to your authorized dealer for repairs before continuing use.
- Unplug the power cord if the machine is not to be used for a long period of time. Otherwise a fire may result.
## Turning on the machine

Prepare the included power cord.

1. Make sure that the sewing machine is turned off (the main power switch is set to “○”), and then plug the power cord into the power supply jack on the right side of the machine.

2. Insert the plug of the power cord into a household electrical outlet.

3. Press the right side of the main power switch on the right side of the machine to turn the machine on (set it to “I”).

   - The light, LCD and (“Start/Stop” button) light up when the machine is turned on.

### Memo

- When the machine is turned on, the needle and the feed dogs will make sound when they move; this is not a malfunction.

## Turning off the machine

When you are finished using the sewing machine, turn it off. In addition, before transporting the sewing machine to another location, be sure to turn it off.

1. Make sure that the machine is not sewing.

2. Press the left side of the main power switch on the right side of the machine to turn the machine off (set it to “○”).

   - The sewing lamps and the LCD go off when the machine is turned off.

3. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.

   Grasp the plug when unplugging the power cord.

4. Unplug the power cord from the power supply jack.

### Note

- If a power outage occurs while the sewing machine is being operated, turn off the sewing machine and unplug the power cord. When restarting the sewing machine, follow the necessary procedure to correctly operate the machine.

(For U.S.A. only)

- This appliance has a polarized plug (one blade wider than the other). To reduce the risk of electrical shock, this plug is intended to fit in a polarized outlet only one way. If the plug does not fit fully in the outlet, reverse the plug. If it still does not fit, contact a qualified electrician to install the proper outlet. Do not modify the plug in any way.
LCD (Liquid Crystal Display) Operation

Selected stitch, pattern settings and messages are displayed on the LCD (liquid crystal display) on the front of the sewing machine.

Viewing the LCD

When the power is turned on, the LCD comes on, and the following screen is displayed. The screen is changed using the keys below the screen, and operations performed by directly touching the icons on the LCD screen.

■ Utility stitch selection screen

![Utility Stitch Selection Screen]

1. Selected stitch
2. Presser foot to be used
3. Stitches
4. Stitch settings and twin needle sewing
5. Stitch width (mm)
6. Stitch length (mm)
7. Thread tension
8. Number of the selected stitch
9. Number of stitches contained in the selected stitch type
10. Horizontal mirror image
11. Automatic thread cutting
12. Automatic reverse/reinforcement
13. Single/twin needle sewing and needle stop position

■ Stitch type selection screen

Press (Utility stitch key) to display the screen for selecting the stitch type. The details are explained in “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

![Stitch Type Selection Screen]

Memo

- A different screen is displayed when the embroidery unit is attached.
- Refer to “Error messages” (page 201) for messages displayed on the LCD.
- Depending on the model of sewing machine, an animation may be displayed when the power is turned on. When an animation is displayed, the screen above will be displayed if you touch the LCD with your finger.
### Changing the machine settings

Various sewing machine operations and sewing settings can be changed. The stitch or machine attributes that can be set are listed below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Needle position</td>
<td></td>
<td>Specifies where the needle is positioned when the sewing machine is stopped.</td>
<td>Down <strong>↓</strong> Up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stitch width control</td>
<td></td>
<td>Allows the stitch width to be adjusted with the sewing speed controller.</td>
<td><strong>ON</strong> <strong>OFF</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertical pattern adjustment</td>
<td></td>
<td>Adjusts the up and down position of the pattern (page 136).</td>
<td>-9 to +9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal pattern adjustment</td>
<td></td>
<td>Adjusts the left and right position of the pattern (page 136).</td>
<td>-9 to +9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thread color display</td>
<td></td>
<td>Changes the thread color display on the embroidery screen.</td>
<td>Thread color/Time to embroider/Needle count/Thread number (#123)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(When “Thread No. #123” is selected)</td>
<td>Embroidery/Country/Madeira poly/Madeira rayon/Sulky/Robison anton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display unit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Selects the measurement units that are displayed (only for embroidering).</td>
<td>mm/INCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embroidery tension</td>
<td></td>
<td>Adjusts the thread tension for embroidering (only for embroidering).</td>
<td>-8 to +8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max embroidery speed</td>
<td></td>
<td>Specifies the maximum embroidering speed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buzzer</td>
<td></td>
<td>Specifies whether or not a beep is sounded with each operation (page 205).</td>
<td><strong>ON</strong> <strong>OFF</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opening screen</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sets whether or not to display the opening screen when the power is turned on. (There are models where this cannot be changed.)</td>
<td><strong>ON</strong> <strong>OFF</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial needle position</td>
<td></td>
<td>Select the straight stitch that is automatically selected when the machine is turned on.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td></td>
<td>Allows the language used in the screens to be changed.</td>
<td>English/French/Spanish/Portuguese/Korean/others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memo</td>
<td></td>
<td>Depending on the model, the following languages may also be available.</td>
<td>German/Italian/Dutch/Japanese/Danish/Norwegian/Finnish/Swedish/Russian/Thai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD brightness</td>
<td></td>
<td>Adjusts the brightness of the LCD.</td>
<td>Lighter <strong>↓</strong> Darker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stitch counter</td>
<td></td>
<td>Display the service count and the total number of embroidery stitches. The service count is a reminder to take your machine in for regular servicing. (Contact your authorized dealer for details.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product number</td>
<td>NO.:</td>
<td>The “NO.” is the number for the sewing and embroidery machine.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Program version</td>
<td>VERSION:</td>
<td>Display the program version.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Turn on the sewing machine.

![Image]

- The LCD comes on.

2 Press 🔄 (Settings key) on the operation panel.

![Image]

- The settings screen appears.

3 Press the item to be set.

Switch screens using ◀ (Previous page key) and ► (Next page key).

![Image]

- The items shown in reverse highlighting are the settings at the time of purchase.

Example: Changing the needle stop position
When settings are complete, press \( \Rightarrow \) (Back key).

The initial screen appears again.

Note

- Settings that are changed are not lost when the power is turned off.

---

**Checking machine operating procedures**

 Displays simple explanations of setting upper thread / bobbin winding / setting bobbin thread / needle replacement / embroidery unit attachment / embroidery frame attachment / embroidery foot attachment / presser foot replacement on the LCD.

1. Turn on the sewing machine.

   - The LCD comes on.

2. Press \( \Rightarrow \) (Sewing machine help key) on the operation panel.

   - The sewing machine help screen appears.

3. Press the item to be displayed.

   - The first screen describing the procedure for the selected topic appears.

   - Pressing \( \Rightarrow \) (Back key), returns you to the item selection screen.
4 Press ▶ (Next page key) to switch to the next page.
   If you press ◀ (Previous page key), you return to the previous page.

- Example: Upper threading

The initial stitch screen appears again.

5 After you finish looking, press ◀ (Back key) two times.

- Note
  - For details on each topic, refer to the corresponding page in this Operation Manual.
**Winding/Installing the Bobbin**

This section describes how to wind the thread onto the bobbin, and then insert the bobbin thread.

### Bobbin precautions

Be sure to observe the following precautions concerning the bobbin.

![CAUTION]

- Only use the Bobbin (part code: SA156, SFB: XA5539-151) designed specifically for this sewing machine. Use of any other bobbin may result in injuries or damage to the machine.
- The included bobbin was designed specifically for this sewing machine. If bobbins from other models are used, the machine will not operate correctly. Use only the included bobbin or bobbins of the same type (part code: SA156, SFB: XA5539-151).

**Actual size**

- 11.5 mm (7/16 inch)

- This model
- Other model

---

**Winding the bobbin**

Wind the thread around the bobbin to prepare the bobbin thread.

![Bobbin winder]

- **memo**
  - The order that the machine should be threaded for winding the bobbin is indicated by a broken line on the sewing machine. Be sure to thread the machine as indicated.
1 Turn on the sewing machine.

2 Open the top cover.

3 Place the bobbin on the bobbin winder shaft so that the spring on the shaft fits into the notch in the bobbin. Press down on the bobbin until it snaps into place.

4 Slide the bobbin winder in the direction of the arrow until it snaps into place.

5 Remove the spool cap that is inserted onto the spool pin.

6 Place the spool of thread for the bobbin onto the spool pin. Slide the spool onto the pin so that the spool is horizontal and the thread unwinds to the front at the bottom.

7 Slide the spool cap onto the spool pin. Slide the spool cap as far as possible to the right, as shown, with the rounded side on the left.

---

**CAUTION**

- If the spool or the spool cap is not positioned correctly, the thread may become tangled around the spool pin and the needle may break.
- Three spool cap sizes are available (large, medium and small), allowing you to choose a spool cap that best fits the size of spool being used. If the spool cap is too small for the spool being used, the thread may catch on the slit in the spool or the machine may be damaged.
Memo

- When sewing with fine, cross-wound thread, use the small spool cap, and leave a small space between the cap and the spool.

1. Spool cap (small)
2. Spool (cross-wound thread)
3. Space

- When using thread that winds off quickly, such as transparent nylon thread or metallic thread, place the spool net over the spool before placing the spool of thread onto the spool pin. If the spool net is too long, fold it to fit the size of the spool.

- When the spool net is used, the tension of the upper thread will slightly increase. Be sure to check the thread tension. For details, refer to “Adjusting the thread tension” (page 59).

8. While holding the thread near the spool with your right hand, as shown, pull the thread with your left hand, and then pass the thread behind the thread guide cover and to the front.

9. Pass the thread under the thread guide plate, and then pull it to the right.

10. Pass the thread under the hook on the thread guide, and then wind it counterclockwise under the pretension disk.

Note

- Make sure that the thread passes under the pretension disk.
While holding the thread with your left hand, wind the thread that was pulled out clockwise around the bobbin five or six times with your right hand.

**Note**
- Make sure that the thread between the spool and the bobbin is pulled tight.
- Be sure to wind the thread clockwise around the bobbin, otherwise the thread will become wrapped around the bobbin winder shaft.

Pass the end of the thread through the guide slit in the bobbin winder seat, and then pull the thread to the right to cut it.

Press (“Start/Stop” button) once to start winding the bobbin. When the foot controller is plugged in, press down on the foot controller.

**CAUTION**
- When the bobbin winding becomes slow, stop the machine, otherwise the sewing machine may be damaged.

Use scissors to cut the end of the thread wound around the bobbin.

Slide the bobbin winder shaft to the left, and then remove the bobbin from the shaft.

**Memo**
- If the bobbin winder shaft is set to the right side, the needle will not move. (Sewing is impossible.)
Remove the spool for the bobbin thread from the spool pin, and then close the top cover.

**Memo**
- When the sewing machine is started or the handwheel is turned after winding the bobbin, the machine will make a clicking sound; this is not a malfunction.

## Installing the bobbin

**CAUTION**
- Use a bobbin that has been correctly wound with thread, otherwise the needle may break or the thread tension will be incorrect.
- The bobbin was designed specifically for this sewing machine. If bobbins from other models are used, the machine will not operate correctly. Use only the included bobbin or bobbins of the same type (part code: SA156, SFB (XA5539-151)).

Install the bobbin wound with thread.

1. Press  (“Needle Position” button) once or twice to raise the needle, and then raise the presser foot lever.
2. Turn off the sewing machine.
3. Slide the bobbin cover latch to the right.
4. Remove the bobbin cover.
5. Hold the bobbin with your right hand and hold the end of the thread with your left.
6. Be careful not to drop the bobbin.
7. Insert the bobbin with your right hand so that the end of the thread is on the left, and then, after pulling the thread firmly around the tab with your left hand as shown, lightly pull the thread to guide it through the slit.
While lightly holding down bobbin with your right hand as shown, guide the thread through the slit (1 and 2).

- At this time, check that the bobbin easily rotates counterclockwise. Then, pull the thread toward you to cut it with the cutter (3).

Memo
- The order that the bobbin thread should be passed through the bobbin case is indicated by marks around the bobbin case. Be sure to thread the machine as indicated.

Note
- Make sure that the thread is correctly inserted through the tension-adjusting spring of the bobbin case. If it is not inserted correctly, reinsert the thread.

Reattach the bobbin cover.
Insert the tab in the lower-left corner of the bobbin cover, and then lightly press down on the right side.

Memo
- You can begin sewing without pulling up the bobbin thread. If you wish to pull up the bobbin thread before starting to sew, pull up the thread according to the procedure in “Pulling up the bobbin thread” (page 39).
Upper Threading

This section describes how to position the spool for the upper thread, and then thread the needle.

CAUTION

• When threading the upper thread, carefully follow the instructions. If the upper threading is not correct, the thread may become tangled and the needle may bend or break.

Memo

• The order that the machine should be threaded is indicated by a solid line on the sewing machine. Be sure to thread the machine as indicated.

About the spool of thread

Information about the spools of thread is described below.

CAUTION

• Three spool cap sizes are available (large, medium and small), allowing you to choose a spool cap that best fits the size of spool being used. If the spool cap is too small for the spool being used, the thread may catch on the slit in the spool and the needle may break.
Threading the upper thread

Set the spool of thread on the spool pin, and then thread the machine.

1 Turn on the sewing machine.

2 Raise the presser foot lever to raise the presser foot.

3 Press ("Needle Position" button) once or twice to raise the needle.

4 Open the top cover.

5 Remove the spool cap that is inserted onto the spool pin.

6 Place the spool of thread onto the spool. Slide the spool onto the pin so that the spool is horizontal and the thread unwinds to the front at the bottom.

CAUTION

- If the spool or the spool cap is not positioned correctly, the thread may become tangled around the spool pin and the needle may break.

7 Slide the spool cap onto the spool pin. Slide the spool cap as far as possible to the right, as shown, with the rounded side on the left.

Note

- If the presser foot is not raised, the sewing machine cannot be threaded.
While holding the thread lightly with your right hand, pull the thread with your left hand, and then pass the thread behind the thread guide cover and to the front.

Pass the thread under the thread guide plate, and then pull it up.

While using your right hand to lightly hold the thread passed under the thread guide plate, pass the thread through the thread path in the order shown below.

Note

- If the presser foot has been lowered and the shutter is closed, the machine cannot be threaded. Be sure to raise the presser foot and open the shutter before threading the machine. In addition, before removing the upper thread, be sure to raise the presser foot and open the shutter.

- This machine is equipped with a window that allows you to check the position of the take-up lever. Look through this window and check that the thread is correctly fed through the take-up lever.

Pass the thread behind the needle bar thread guide.
The thread can easily be passed behind the needle bar thread guide by holding the thread in your left hand, then feeding the thread with your right hand, as shown.

Next, use the needle threader to thread the needle. Continue with the procedure in “Threading the needle” (page 34).
Threading the needle

This section describes how to thread the needle.

**Memo**
- The needle threader can be used with sewing machine needles 75/11 through 100/16.
- The needle threader cannot be used with the wing needle or the twin needle.
- If the needle threader cannot be used, refer to “Threading the needle manually (without using the needle threader)” (page 35).

Pull the end of the thread, which has been passed through the needle bar thread guide, to the left, then pass the thread through the notch of the thread guide 1, and then firmly pull the thread from the front and insert it into the slit of the thread guide disk marked “7” all the way 2. Make sure that the thread passes the notch of the thread guide.

Cut the thread with the thread cutter on the left side of the machine.

**Note**
- If the thread is pulled through and cannot be cut correctly, lower the presser foot so that the thread is held in place before cutting the thread. If this operation is performed, skip step 3.
- When using thread that quickly winds off the spool, such as metallic thread, it may be difficult to thread the needle if the thread is cut. Therefore, instead of using the thread cutter, pull out about 80 mm (approx. 3 inches) of thread after passing it through the thread guide disks (marked “7”).

Lower the presser foot lever to lower the presser foot.

Lower the needle threader lever on the left side of the machine until it clicks, and then slowly return the lever to its original position.

The thread is passed through the eye of the needle.
Note
- If the needle was not completely threaded, but a loop in the thread was formed in the eye of the needle, carefully pull the loop through the eye of the needle to pull out the end of the thread.

CAUTION
- When pulling out the thread, do not pull it with extreme force, otherwise the needle may break or bend.

5. Raise the presser foot lever, pass the end of the thread through the presser foot, and then pull out about 5 cm (2 inches) of thread toward the rear of the machine.

1. Pressor foot lever

5 cm (2 inches)

The upper threading is finished.

Now that the upper threading and the lower threading are finished, you are ready to begin sewing.

Note
- If the needle is not raised, the needle threader cannot thread the needle. Be sure to press [ Needle Position button] to raise the needle before using the needle threader.

Threading the needle manually (without using the needle threader)

When using specialty thread, such as transparent nylon thread or metallic thread, a wing needle or a twin needle which cannot be used with the needle threader, thread the needle as described below.

1. Thread the machine to the needle bar thread guide.
   - For details, refer to “Upper Threading” (page 31).

2. Lower the presser foot lever.

3. Pass the thread through the eye of the needle from front to back.

4. Raise the presser foot lever, pass the end of the thread through the presser foot, and then pull out about 5 cm (2 inches) of thread toward the rear of the machine.

CAUTION
- Do not touch the Start/Stop button, Needle Position button or Reverse/Reinforcement stitch button. If one of the buttons is accidentally pressed, the machine will begin sewing and your finger may be pricked with the needle or the needle may break.
Using the twin needle

With the twin needle, you can sew two parallel lines of the same stitch with two different threads. Both upper threads should have the same thickness and quality. Be sure to use the twin needle, the extra spool pin and the spool cap.

For details on the stitches that can be sewn with the twin needle, refer to “Stitch Setting Chart” (page 70).

CAUTION

- Only use the twin needle (part code: X59296-121). Use of any other needle may bend the needle or damage the machine.
- Never use bent needles. Bent needles can easily break, possibly resulting in injuries.

1. Install the twin needle.
   - For details on installing a needle, refer to “Replacing the needle” (page 42).

2. Thread the upper thread for the left needle eye.
   - For details, refer to steps 1 through 11 of “Threading the upper thread” (page 32).

3. Manually thread the left needle with the upper thread.
   Pass the thread through the eye of the needle from the front.

   - The needle threader cannot be used with the twin needle. If the needle threader is used with the twin needle, the sewing machine may be damaged.

4. Insert the extra spool pin onto the bobbin winder shaft.
   Insert the extra spool pin so that it is perpendicular to the bobbin winder shaft.

5. Swing down the spool pin so that it is horizontal.

6. Place the upper thread spool for the needle on the right side onto the extra spool pin, and then secure it with the spool cap.
   The thread should unroll from the top front of the spool.
Thread the upper thread for the right side in the same way that the upper thread for the left side was threaded.

Without passing the thread through the needle bar thread guide, manually thread the right needle. Pass the thread through the eye of the needle from the front.

The needle threader cannot be used with the twin needle. If the needle threader is used with the twin needle, the sewing machine may be damaged.

Attach zigzag foot “J”.

For details on changing the presser foot, refer to “Replacing the Presser Foot” (page 44).

When using the twin needle, be sure to select an appropriate stitch, otherwise the needle may break or the machine may be damaged.

After adjusting the stitch width, slowly turn the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) and check that the needle does not touch the presser foot. If the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may bend or break.

Turn on the sewing machine and select a stitch.

- For stitch selection see “Selecting stitching” (page 51).
- See “Stitch Setting Chart” (page 70) for stitches that use a twin needle.

Note

- When using the pintuck foot (sold separately) to sew straight pintucks with the twin needle, select the stitch with the center needle position.

CAUTION

- When using the twin needle, be sure to attach zigzag foot “J”. If bunched stitches occur, use presser foot “N” or attach stabilizer material.
**GETTING READY**

12. **Press 🈯.**

- 🈯 displays in reverse highlight.
- If pressed again, it returns to 🈯.

The twin needle can now be used.

13. **Press → (Back key).**

- The initial screen appears again, and 🈯 appears.

---

**CAUTION**

- When changing the sewing direction, press 🏃 (“Needle Position” button) to raise the needle from the fabric, and then raise the presser foot lever and turn the fabric. Otherwise the needle may break or the machine may be damaged.
- Do not try turning the fabric with the twin needle left down in the fabric, otherwise the needle may break or the machine may be damaged.

---

**CAUTION**

- When using the twin needle, be sure to select the twin needle setting, otherwise the needle may break or the machine may be damaged.

14. **Start sewing.**

- For details on starting to sew, refer to “Starting to sew” (page 53).
- Two lines of stitching are sewn parallel to each other.
When making gathers or before free-motion quilting, first pull up the bobbin thread as described below.

1. **Insert the bobbin into the bobbin case.**
   - Refer to steps 3 through 7 of “Installing the bobbin” (page 29).

2. **Pass the bobbin thread through the slot.**
   - Do not cut the thread with the cutter.

3. **While lightly holding the upper thread with your left hand with the needle in the up-position, press ("Needle Position" button) twice to lower and raise the needle.**

4. **Carefully pull the upper thread upward to pull out the end of the bobbin thread.**

5. **Pull out about 10 cm (4 inches) of the bobbin thread under the presser foot toward the rear of the machine.**

6. **Reattach the bobbin cover.**
   - Insert the tab in the lower-left corner of the bobbin cover, and then lightly press down on the right side.
Replacing the Needle

This section describes how to replace the needle.

Needle precautions

Be sure to observe the following precautions concerning the handling of the needle. Failure to observe these precautions is extremely dangerous, for example, if the needle breaks and fragments are dispersed. Be sure to read and carefully follow the instructions below.

⚠️ CAUTION

- Only use home sewing machine needles. Use of any other needle may bend the needle or damage the machine.
- Never use bent needles. Bent needles can easily break, possibly resulting in injuries.
Needle types and their uses

The sewing machine needle that should be used depends on the fabric and thread thickness. Refer to the following table when choosing the thread and needle appropriate for the fabric that you wish to sew.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fabric Type/Application</th>
<th>Thread Type</th>
<th>Thread Size</th>
<th>Size of Needle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Medium weight fabrics</strong></td>
<td>Broadcloth</td>
<td>Cotton thread</td>
<td>60–90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Taffeta</td>
<td>Synthetic thread</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flannel, Gabardine</td>
<td>Silk thread</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thin fabrics</strong></td>
<td>Lawn</td>
<td>Cotton thread</td>
<td>60–90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Georgette</td>
<td>Synthetic thread</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Challis, Satin</td>
<td>Silk thread</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thick fabrics</strong></td>
<td>Denim</td>
<td>Cotton thread</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Corduroy</td>
<td>Synthetic thread</td>
<td>50–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tweed</td>
<td>Silk thread</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stretch fabrics</strong></td>
<td>Jersey</td>
<td>Thread for knits</td>
<td>50–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tricot</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Easily frayed fabrics</strong></td>
<td>Cotton thread</td>
<td>50–90</td>
<td>65/9–90/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Synthetic thread</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Silk thread</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>For top-stitching</strong></td>
<td>Synthetic thread</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>100/16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Silk thread</td>
<td>50–60</td>
<td>90/11–90/14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**
- Never use a thread of weight 20 or lower. It may cause malfunctions.

**Thread and needle number**
The lower the thread number is, the larger the thread, and the larger the needle number, the larger the needle.

**Ball point needle (gold colored)**
To avoid skipped stitches use ball point needles with stretch fabrics.

**Transparent nylon thread**
Use a 90/14 to 100/16 needle, regardless of the fabric or thread.

**Embroidery needles**
Use a 75/11 home sewing machine needle. When embroidering on thick fabrics such as denim, use a 90/14 or 100/16 home sewing machine needle.

**CAUTION**
- The appropriate fabric, thread and needle combinations are shown in the table above. If the combination of the fabric, thread and needle is not correct, particularly when sewing thick fabrics (such as denim) with thin needles (such as 65/9 to 75/11), the needle may bend or break. In addition, the stitching may be uneven or puckered or there may be skipped stitches.
Checking the needle

Sewing with a bent needle is extremely dangerous since the needle may break while the machine is being operated. Before using the needle, place the flat side of the needle on a flat surface and check that the distance between the needle and the flat surface is even.

![Diagram showing flat side of needle and needle type marking]

1. Flat side
2. Needle type marking

**CAUTION**
- If the distance between the needle and the flat surface is not even, the needle is bent. Do not use a bent needle.

Replacing the needle

Replace the needle as described below. Use the screwdriver and a needle that has been determined to be straight according to the instructions in “Checking the needle”.

1. Press (+) (“Needle Position” button) once or twice to raise the needle.

![Diagram showing “Needle Position” button]

2. Turn off the sewing machine.

**CAUTION**
- Before replacing the needle, be sure to turn off the sewing machine, otherwise injuries may occur if (Start/Stop button) is accidentally pressed and the machine starts sewing.

3. Place fabric or paper under the presser foot to cover the hole in the needle plate.

**Note**
- Before replacing the needle, cover the hole in the needle plate with fabric or paper to prevent the needle from falling into the machine.

4. Lower the presser foot lever.

![Diagram showing presser foot lever]
5 Hold the needle with your left hand, and then use a screwdriver to turn the needle clamp screw toward you (counterclockwise) to remove the needle.

- Screwdriver
- Needle clamp screw

- Do not apply a strong force when loosening or tightening the needle clamp screw, otherwise certain parts of the sewing machine may be damaged.

6 With the flat side of the needle toward the rear of the machine, insert the needle until it touches the needle stopper.

- Needle stopper

7 While holding the needle with your left hand, use the screwdriver to tighten the needle clamp screw.

Install the twin needle in the same way.

CAUTION

- Be sure to insert the needle until it touches the needle stopper and securely tighten the needle clamp screw with the screwdriver, otherwise the needle may break or damage may result.
Replacing the Presser Foot

This section describes how to replace the presser foot.

Presser foot precautions

Be sure to observe the following precautions concerning the presser feet.

**CAUTION**
- Use the presser foot appropriate for the type of stitch that you wish to sew, otherwise the needle may hit the presser foot, causing the needle to bend or break.
- Only use presser feet designed specifically for this sewing machine. Use of any other presser foot may result in injuries or damage to the machine.

Replacing the presser foot

Replace the presser foot as described below.

1. Press  (“Needle Position” button) once or twice to raise the needle.

   ![“Needle Position” button](image)

   1. “Needle Position” button

2. Turn off the sewing machine.

3. Raise the presser foot lever.

   ![Presser foot lever](image)

   1. Presser foot lever
   - The presser foot is raised.

4. Press the black button at the back of the presser foot holder.

   ![Presser foot holder](image)

   1. Black button
   2. Presser foot holder
   - The presser foot holder releases the presser foot.

**CAUTION**
- Before replacing the presser foot, be sure to turn off the sewing machine, otherwise injuries may occur if (“Start/Stop” button) is accidentally pressed and the machine starts sewing.
Place a different presser foot below the holder so that the presser foot pin is aligned with the notch in the holder.

Position the presser foot so the letter indicating the presser foot type (A, G, I, J, M, N or R) is positioned to be read.

Slowly lower the presser foot lever so that the presser foot pin snaps into the notch in the presser foot holder.

Raise the presser foot lever to check that the presser foot is securely attached.

**Note**
- When a stitch is selected, the icon for the presser foot that should be used appears in the screen. Check that the correct presser foot is attached before starting to sew. If the wrong presser foot is installed, turn off the sewing machine, attach the correct presser foot, and then select the desired stitch again.

For details on the presser foot that should be used with the selected stitch, refer to “Stitch Setting Chart” (page 70).
Removing and attaching the presser foot holder

Remove the presser foot holder when cleaning the sewing machine or when installing a presser foot that does not use the presser foot holder, such as the embroidery foot and optional quilting foot. Use the screwdriver to remove the presser foot holder.

1 Remove the presser foot.
   - For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

2 Use the screwdriver to loosen the presser foot holder screw.

   ① Screwdriver  ② Presser foot holder  ③ Presser foot holder screw

■ Attaching the presser foot holder

1 Raise the presser foot lever.

2 Align the presser foot holder with the lower-left side of the presser bar.

3 Hold the presser foot holder in place with your right hand, and then tighten the screw using the screwdriver in your left hand.

   ① Screwdriver

Note
   - If the presser foot holder is not correctly installed, the thread tension will be incorrect.
Sewing Cylindrical Pieces

Free-arm sewing makes sewing cylindrical pieces easy.

**Free-arm sewing**

Removing the flat bed attachment allows for free-arm sewing, making it easier to sew cylindrical pieces such as sleeve cuffs and pant legs.

1. Pull the flat bed attachment off to the left.

   ![Pull the flat bed attachment off to the left.]

   ▶ With the flat bed attachment removed, free-arm sewing is possible.

2. Slide the part that you wish to sew onto the arm, and then sew from the top.

   ![Slide the part that you wish to sew onto the arm, and then sew from the top.]

3. When you are finished with free-arm sewing, install the flat bed attachment back in its original position.

   ![When you are finished with free-arm sewing, install the flat bed attachment back in its original position.]
The necessary preparations for sewing are described in this chapter.

Sewing .................................................................................................................................50
  General sewing procedure .........................................................................................50
  Selecting stitching .................................................................................................51
  Positioning the fabric ...........................................................................................52
  Starting to sew ..................................................................................................53
  Securing the stitching .........................................................................................55
  Cutting the thread ...............................................................................................56

Setting the Stitch .........................................................................................................58
  Adjusting the stitch width ..................................................................................58
  Adjusting the stitch length ..............................................................................59
  Adjusting the thread tension ............................................................................59

Useful Functions ........................................................................................................61
  Automatically sewing reverse/reinforcement stitches ...................................61
  Automatically cutting the thread ...................................................................62
  Mirroring stitches ............................................................................................63

Useful Sewing Tips ...................................................................................................64
  Trial sewing ......................................................................................................64
  Changing the sewing direction .....................................................................64
  Sewing curves .................................................................................................64
  Adjusting the presser foot pressure ...............................................................64
  Sewing thick fabrics .......................................................................................65
  Sewing thin fabrics .........................................................................................66
  Sewing stretch fabrics ....................................................................................66
  Sewing leathers or vinyl fabrics ....................................................................66
  Sewing an even seam allowance .....................................................................66
  Hands-free raising and lowering of the presser foot .....................................67
  Sewing hook-and-loop fastener .....................................................................68
## Sewing

Basic sewing operations are described below. Before operating the sewing machine, read the following precautions.

### CAUTION

- While the machine is in operation, pay special attention to the needle location. In addition, keep your hands away from all moving parts such as the needle and handwheel, otherwise injuries may occur.
- Do not pull or push the fabric too hard while sewing, otherwise injuries may occur or the needle may break.
- Never use bent needles. Bent needles can easily break, possibly resulting in injuries.
- Make sure that the needle does not strike basting pins, otherwise the needle may break or bend.

### General sewing procedure

Follow the basic procedures below to sew.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Turn on the machine. Turn on the sewing machine. For details on turning on the machine, refer to “Turning on the machine” (page 19).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Select the stitch. Select the stitch appropriate for the area to be sewn. For details on selecting a stitch, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Attach the presser foot. Attach the presser foot appropriate for the stitch. (Be sure to turn off the machine before replacing the presser foot.) For details on replacing the presser foot, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Position the fabric. Place the area to be sewn under the presser foot. Be sure that the fabric pieces are sewn in the correct order and that the right and wrong sides of the fabric are aligned correctly. For details on positioning the fabric, refer to “Positioning the fabric” (page 52).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Start sewing. Start sewing. For details on starting to sew, refer to “Starting to sew” (page 53).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Cut the thread. Cut the thread at the end of sewing. For details on cutting the thread, refer to “Cutting the thread” (page 56).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Selecting stitching

Stitches are selected using LCD operations. There are 71 utility stitches. Right after turning the power on, the straight stitch (left needle position) is selected. The machine can also be set to select the straight stitch (center needle position). For details on changing the setting, refer to page 21.

1 Determine the stitch to be used, and get the matching presser foot ready.
   • Refer to “Stitch Setting Chart” (page 70).

2 Attach the presser foot.
   The machine comes with zigzag foot “J” attached.
   • For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

   ! CAUTION
   • Use the presser foot appropriate for the stitch. If the wrong presser foot is used, the needle may hit the presser foot and break or bend.

3 Turn on the sewing machine.

   ▶ The straight stitch (left needle position) is shown selected in the LCD.
   • When an animation is displayed on the screen, touch the screen with your finger.

4 Select a stitch.
   (Previous page key) displays the previous screen, and (Next page key) displays the next screen.

   ▶ The stitch is selected, and the stitch number and settings are displayed.

5 If necessary, specify the setting for automatic reverse/reinforcement stitching and adjust the stitch length, etc.

   Memo
   • Uses of stitches and other stitch selections are explained in “UTILITY STITCHES” (page 69).
   • Automatic reverse/reinforcement stitching and other settings are explained in “Useful Functions” (page 61).
   • The procedures for specifying the thread tension are described in “Adjusting the thread tension” (page 59).
   • Procedures for changing the stitch width and length are described in “Adjusting the stitch width” (page 58) and “Adjusting the stitch length” (page 59).

   Note
   • When a stitch is selected, the icon for the presser foot that should be used appears on the screen. For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44). Check that the correct presser foot is attached before starting to sew. If the wrong presser foot is installed, turn off the sewing machine, attach the correct presser foot, and then select the desired stitch again.
Positioning the fabric

Be sure that the fabric pieces are sewn in the correct order and that the right and wrong sides of the fabric are aligned correctly.

1. **Turn on the sewing machine.**

2. **Press** ("Needle Position" button) once or twice to raise the needle.

3. **Place the fabric under the presser foot.**
   - If the seam allowance is positioned on the right side, sewing in a straight line is easier and the extra fabric does not get in the way.

4. While holding the end of the thread and the fabric with your left hand, turn the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) with your right hand to lower the needle to the starting point of the stitching.

5. **Lower the presser foot lever.**
   - The fabric is now positioned to be sewn.
Starting to sew

Once you are ready to start sewing, you can start the sewing machine. The sewing speed can be adjusted using either the sewing speed controller or the foot controller.

**Note**

- When the foot controller is plugged in, ("Start/Stop" button) cannot be used to start sewing.

### Using the operation button

Sewing can be started and stopped using the operation button ("Start/Stop" button).

1. **Slide the sewing speed controller to the left or right to select the desired sewing speed.**
   - Slide the sewing speed controller to the left to sew at a slower speed, or slide the speed controller to the right to sew at a faster speed.

2. **Press ("Start/Stop" button) once.**

   ![Illustration of sewing speed controller]

   - Sewing speed controller

   ![Illustration of "Start/Stop" button]

   - "Start/Stop" button

   - The machine starts sewing.

- If you continue to hold the ("Start/Stop" button) pressed immediately after the sewing starts, the machine will sew at a slow speed.

3. **When the end of the stitching is reached, press ("Start/Stop" button) once.**

   - The machine stops sewing with the needle down (in the fabric).

4. **When you have finished sewing, press ("Needle Position" button).**

   - The needle is raised.

5. **Cut the threads.**

   - For details, refer to “Cutting the thread” (page 56).

**Note**

- This machine will automatically stop when the bobbin becomes almost empty. When the machine stops, replace the bobbin thread, and then press ("Start/Stop" button) to begin sewing again.

### Using the foot controller

Sewing can be started and stopped using the foot controller.

1. **Turn off the sewing machine.**

   - When connecting the foot controller, be sure to turn off the sewing machine in order to prevent the machine from accidentally being started.
Insert the foot controller plug into its jack on the right side of the sewing machine.

Foot controller jack

Turn on the sewing machine.

Sewing speed controller

Slide the sewing speed controller to the left or right to select the foot controller’s maximum sewing speed.

Slide the sewing speed controller to the left to select a lower maximum sewing speed, or slide the speed controller to the right to select a higher maximum sewing speed.

When the end of the stitching is reached, completely release the foot controller.

The machine stops sewing with the needle lowered (in the fabric).

When you have finished sewing, press (“Needle Position” button).

The needle is raised.

Cut the threads.

For details, refer to “Cutting the thread” (page 56).

Memo

When the foot controller is plugged in, (“Start/Stop” button) cannot be used to start sewing.

When sewing is stopped, the needle remains lowered (in the fabric). The machine can be set so that the needle will stay up when sewing is stopped. For details on setting the machine so that the needle stays up when sewing is stopped, refer to “Changing the machine settings” (page 21).

CAUTION

Do not allow thread or dust to accumulate in the foot controller, otherwise a fire or an electric shock may occur.

Do not place objects on the foot controller, otherwise damage to the machine or injuries may occur.

If the machine is not to be used for a long period of time, unplug the foot controller, otherwise a fire or an electric shock may occur.

Once you are ready to start sewing, slowly press down on the foot controller.

Pressing down on the foot controller increases the sewing speed; releasing the pressure on the foot controller decreases the sewing speed.

Slowly press down on the foot controller. Pressing it down hard starts sewing too quickly.

The machine starts sewing.
Securing the stitching

When sewing with the straight stitch, for example, at the end of an opening or where seams do not overlap, use reverse stitching or reinforcement stitching to secure the end of the thread.

1. Lower the needle into the fabric at the beginning of the stitching, and then lower the presser foot lever.

2. Press ① ("Start/Stop" button) or press down on the foot controller.
   At this time, if ① ("Start/Stop" button) is held down, the machine sews at a slow speed.

3. After sewing 3 to 5 stitches, press ⑦ ("Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button).
   Keep ⑦ ("Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button) held down until you reach the beginning of the stitching.
   • The machine sews at a slow speed when ⑦ ("Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button) is held down.

4. After sewing back to the beginning of the stitching, release ⑨ ("Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button).
   • The machine stops sewing.

5. Press ① ("Start/Stop" button), or press down on the foot controller.
   • The machine starts sewing in the normal sewing direction.

6. When the end of the stitching is reached, press ⑨ ("Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button).
   Keep ⑨ ("Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button) held down until 3 to 5 reverse stitches are sewn.
   • While ⑨ ("Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button) is held down, reverse stitches are sewn.
After 3 to 5 reverse stitches have been sewn, release (“Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button). The machine stops sewing.

Press (“Start/Stop” button), or press down on the foot controller. At this time, if (“Start/Stop” button) is held down, the machine sews at a slow speed. The machine starts sewing in the normal sewing direction.

After sewing to the end of the stitching, the sewing machine stops. Press (“Start/Stop” button) or release foot controller.

Sewing stitches
Reverse stitches are preset for the 1 3 7 stitches. When (“Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button) is pressed with stitches other than these, reinforcement stitches are used. Reinforcement stitches are 3 to 5 stitches sewn on top of each other in one place.

Memo
The sewing machine can be set to automatically sew reverse or reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of the stitching. For details, refer to “Automatically sewing reverse/reinforcement stitches” (page 61).

Cutting the thread
When you have finished sewing, cut the threads.

Using (“Thread Cutter” button)
When you wish to finish the stitching, press (“Thread Cutter” button) once.

1. “Thread Cutter” button
The threads are cut and the needle is raised.

2. Raise the presser foot lever, then remove the fabric.

CAUTION
Do not press (“Thread Cutter” button) after threads have already been cut, otherwise the needle may break, the threads may become tangled or damage to the machine may occur.

Do not press (“Thread Cutter” button) if there is no fabric under the presser foot or while the machine is sewing, otherwise damage to the machine may occur.

Memo
The machine can be set so that the threads will be cut when sewing is finished. For details on setting the machine so that the threads are cut automatically, refer to “Automatically cutting the thread” (page 62).
Using the thread cutter
When sewing with nylon or metallic threads, or other special threads, use the thread cutter on the side of the machine to cut the threads.

1 When you wish to finish the stitching and the sewing machine is stopped, press ("Needle Position" button) once to raise the needle.

   1 “Needle Position” button
   - The needle is raised.

2 Raise the presser foot lever.

   1 Presser foot lever

3 Pull the fabric to the left side of the machine, and then pass the threads through the thread cutter to cut them.

   1 Thread cutter
Setting the Stitch

This machine is preset with the default settings for the stitch width, stitch length, and upper thread tension for each stitch. However, you can change any of the settings by pressing \[ \text{[W]} \] in the screen, then following the procedure described in this section.

Note

- If the thread tension cannot be adjusted as desired, refer to “List of symptoms” (page 197).
- Settings for some stitches cannot be changed. For details, refer to “Stitch Setting Chart” (page 70).
- Stitch settings return to their defaults if they are changed, when the machine is turned off or a different stitch is selected before the stitch setting is saved.

Adjusting the stitch width

The stitch width (zigzag width) can be adjusted to make the stitch wider or narrower.

- Each press of \[ \text{[—]} \] makes the zigzag stitch narrower.
- Each press of \[ \text{[+]} \] makes the zigzag stitch wider.

Memo

- Press \[ \text{[RESET]} \] to return the setting to its default.
- If the straight stitch (left needle position or triple stretch stitch) was selected, changing the stitch width changes the needle position. Increasing the width moves the needle to the right; reducing the width moves the needle to the left.
- The sewing machine can be set so that the stitch width can easily be changed with the sewing speed controller. For details, refer to “Satin stitching using the sewing speed controller” (page 111).
- \[ \text{[—]} \] means the setting cannot be adjusted.

CAUTION

- After adjusting the stitch width, slowly turn the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) and check that the needle does not touch the presser foot. If the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may bend or break.
Adjusting the stitch length

The stitch length can be adjusted to make the stitch longer or shorter.

Each press of \( - \) makes the stitch shorter.

Each press of \( + \) makes the stitch longer.

Memo

Press \( \text{RESET} \) to return the setting to its default.

\( \text{-} \) means the setting cannot be adjusted.

CAUTION

If the stitches are bunched together, increase the stitch length. Continuing to sew with the stitches bunched together may result in the needle bending or breaking.

Adjusting the thread tension

You may need to change the thread tension, depending on the fabric and thread being used.

Correct thread tension

The upper thread and the bobbin thread should cross near the center of the fabric. Only the upper thread should be visible from the right side of the fabric, and only the bobbin thread should be visible from the wrong side of the fabric.

1. Wrong side of fabric
2. Right side of fabric
3. Upper thread
4. Bobbin thread
### Upper thread is too tight

If the bobbin thread is visible from the right side of the fabric, the upper thread is too tight.

#### Note
- If the bobbin thread was incorrectly threaded, the upper thread may be too tight. In this case, refer to “Installing the bobbin” (page 29) and rethread the bobbin thread.

![Diagram](image)

1. Wrong side of fabric
2. Right side of fabric
3. Upper thread
4. Bobbin thread
5. The bobbin thread is visible from the right side of the fabric.

Each press of the decreases makes the thread tension looser.

### Upper thread is too loose

If the upper thread is visible from the wrong side of the fabric, the upper thread is too loose.

#### Note
- If the upper thread was incorrectly threaded, the upper thread may be too loose. In this case, refer to “Upper Threading” (page 31) and rethread the upper thread.

![Diagram](image)

1. Wrong side of fabric
2. Right side of fabric
3. Upper thread
4. Bobbin thread
5. The upper thread is visible from the wrong side of the fabric.

Each press of the increases makes the thread tension tighter.

#### Memo
- Press \[ \text{RESET} \] to return the setting to its default.

#### Note
- If the upper thread is not threaded correctly or the bobbin is not installed correctly, it may not be possible to set the correct thread tension. If the correct thread tension cannot be achieved, rethread the upper thread and insert the bobbin correctly.
Useful Functions

Functions useful in improving sewing efficiency are described below.

Automatically sewing reverse/reinforcement stitches

The sewing machine can be set to automatically sew reverse or reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of the stitching. Whether reverse stitches or reinforcement stitches are sewn depends on the stitch that is selected. For details, refer to “Stitch Setting Chart” (page 70).

1 Turn on the sewing machine.
   ▶ The LCD comes on.

2 Select a stitch.
   • For details on selecting a stitch, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

3 Press [ ] on the LCD.
   This step is not necessary if a stitch such as those for sewing buttonholes and bar tacks is selected where reinforcement stitches are automatically sewn.
   ▶ It turns to , and the sewing machine is set for automatic reverse/reinforcement stitching.

4 Position the fabric under the presser foot, and then press ("Start/Stop" button) once.

5 After reaching the end of the stitching, press ("Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button) once.
   This step is not necessary if a stitch such as those for sewing buttonholes and bar tacks is selected where reinforcement stitches are automatically sewn.

Memo

• Reverse/reinforcement stitches WILL NOT be sewn until ("Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button) is pressed. ("Start/Stop" button) may be pressed to stop stitching when needed such as for pivoting corners.

1 “Start/Stop” button
   ▶ After reverse/reinforcement stitches are sewn, the machine starts sewing.

2 “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button
   ▶ After reverse/reinforcement stitches are sewn, the sewing machine stops.
Automatically cutting the thread

The sewing machine can be set to automatically cut the threads at the end of the stitching. This is called “programmed thread-cutting”. If programmed thread-cutting is set, automatic reverse/reinforcement stitching is also set.

1 Turn on the sewing machine.

   ➤ The LCD comes on.

2 Select a stitch.
   • For details on selecting a stitch, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

3 Press  on the screen.

   ➤ You get , and the sewing machine is set for programmed thread-cutting and automatic reverse/reinforcement stitching.

   • To turn programmed thread cutting off, press .

4 Set the fabric in place, and press  ("Start/Stop" button) once.

   ① “Start/Stop” button
   ➤ Stitching starts after reverse stitching or reinforcement stitching.

5 Once you have reached the end of the stitching, press  ("Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button) once.

If stitching, such as buttonholes and bar tacking, that includes reinforcement stitching has been selected, this operation is unnecessary.

   ➤ After the reverse stitching or reinforcement stitching has been done, the sewing machine stops, and the thread is cut.

The thread is cut here.

Memo

● Reverse/reinforcement stitches WILL NOT be sewing and the thread will not automatically be cut until  ("Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button) is pressed.  ("Start/Stop" button) may be pressed to stop stitching when needed such as for pivoting corners.

● If the power is turned off, programmed thread-cutting will be turned off.
Mirroring stitches

You can sew the mirror image of a stitch horizontally (left and right).

1 Turn on the sewing machine.

- The LCD comes on.

2 Select a stitch.

- For details on selecting a stitch, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

3 Press on the screen.

- It turns to , and the pattern displayed at the top of the screen is mirrored.

- To turn the mirrored stitching off, press .

Memo

- Mirroring is not possible for buttonholes and other stitches where shows.
- When the sewing machine is turned off, the mirroring setting is cancelled.
Useful Sewing Tips

Various ways to achieve better results for your sewing projects are described below. Refer to these tips when sewing your project.

**Trial sewing**

After you have set up the machine with the thread and needle appropriate for the type of fabric being sewn, the machine automatically sets the thread tension and stitch length and width for the stitch that is selected. However, a trial piece of fabric should be sewn since, depending on the type of fabric and stitching being sewn, the desired results may not be achieved. For the trial sewing, use a piece of fabric and thread that are the same as those used for your project, and check the thread tension and stitch length and width. Since the results differ depending on the type of stitching and the number of layers of fabric sewn, perform the trial sewing under the same conditions that will be used with your project.

**Changing the sewing direction**

1. **When the stitching reaches a corner, stop the sewing machine.**
   Leave the needle lowered (in the fabric). If the needle remained up when the machine stopped sewing, press \(\text{“Needle Position” button}\) to lower the needle.

2. **Raise the presser foot lever, and then turn the fabric.**
   Turn the fabric using the needle as a pivot.

3. **Lower the presser foot lever and continue sewing.**

**Sewing curves**

Stop sewing, and then slightly change the sewing direction to sew around the curve. For details on sewing with an even seam allowance, refer to “Sewing an even seam allowance” (page 66).

When sewing along a curve while using a zigzag stitch, select a shorter stitch length in order to obtain a finer stitch.

**Adjusting the presser foot pressure**

The presser foot pressure (the amount of pressure applied to the fabric by the presser foot) can be adjusted.

1. **Lower the presser foot lever to lower the presser foot.**
Useful Sewing Tips

2 Turn the presser foot pressure dial at the back of the machine to adjust the pressure of the presser foot.

The scale on the dial indicates the range from 1 (weak) to 4 (strong). Turn the dial to the right (smaller number) to decrease the pressure. Turn the dial to the left (larger number) to increase the pressure.

3 When you are finished sewing, reset the dial to 3 (standard).

Sewing thick fabrics

- **If the fabric does not fit under the presser foot**
  - If the fabric does not fit easily under the presser foot, raise the presser foot lever even higher to bring the presser foot to its highest position.

- **If thick seams are being sewn and the fabric does not feed at the beginning of stitching**
  - The fabric may not feed when thick seams are being sewn and the presser foot is not level, as shown below. In this case, use the presser foot locking pin (black button on the left side of zigzag foot “J”) so that the presser foot remains level while sewing, allowing the fabric to be fed smoothly.

1. Sewing direction
2. Raise the presser foot lever.
3. Align the beginning of stitching, and then position the fabric.
4. While holding zigzag foot “J” level, hold the presser foot locking pin (black button on the left side) pressed in, and lower the presser foot lever.

1. Presser foot holding pin (black button)
2. Release the presser foot locking pin (black button).

- The presser foot remains level, allowing the fabric to be fed.

- After the seam is sewn, the presser foot will return to its original angle.

**CAUTION**

- If fabric more than 6 mm (15/64 inch) thick is sewn or if the fabric is pushed with too much force, the needle may bend or break.
Sewing thin fabrics

When sewing thin fabrics, the stitching may become misaligned or the fabric may not feed correctly. If this occurs, place thin paper or stabilizer material under the fabric and sew it together with the fabric. When you have finished sewing, tear off any excess paper.

![Sewing thin fabrics diagram]

Sewing stretch fabrics

First, baste the pieces of fabric together, and then sew without stretching the fabric.

![Sewing stretch fabrics diagram]

Sewing leathers or vinyl fabrics

When sewing the fabrics that may stick to the presser foot such as leathers or coated fabrics, change the presser foot to the non stick foot.

![Sewing leathers or vinyl fabrics diagram]

Sewing an even seam allowance

To sew an even seam, start sewing so that the seam allowance is to the right of the presser foot, and the edge of the fabric is aligned with either the right edge of the presser foot or a marking on the needle plate.

- **Aligning the fabric with the presser foot**
  Sew while keeping the right edge of the presser foot a fixed distance from the edge of the fabric.

![Sewing an even seam allowance with presser foot diagram]

- **Aligning the fabric with the stitch guide foot**
  Sew while keeping the right edge of the fabric aligned with a desired position of markings on the stitch guide foot.

![Sewing an even seam allowance with stitch guide foot diagram]
**Aligning the fabric with a needle plate marking**

The markings on the needle plate show the distance from the needle position of a seam sewn with the straight stitch (left needle position). Sew while keeping the edge of the fabric aligned with a marking in the needle plate. The distance between the markings in the upper scale is 1/8 inch (3 mm) and the distance between the markings in the grid is 5 mm (3/16 inch).

**Hands-free raising and lowering of the presser foot**

Using the knee lifter, you can raise and lower the presser foot with your knee, leaving both hands free to handle the fabric.

**Installing the knee lifter**

1. Turn off the sewing machine.

2. Insert the knee lifter into the mounting slot on the front of the sewing machine in the lower-right corner.

   Align the tabs on the knee lifter with the notches in the mounting slot, and then insert the knee lifter as far as possible.

**Note**

- If the knee lifter is not fully inserted into the mounting slot, it may fall out while the sewing machine is operating.
Using the knee lifter

1. Stop the sewing machine.
   - Do not use the knee lifter while the sewing machine is operating.

2. With your knee, press the knee lifter to the right.
   Keep the knee lifter pressed to the right.

   ![Image of knee lifter](image)

   - The presser foot is raised.

3. Release the knee lifter.
   - The presser foot is lowered.

   ![Image of knee lifter](image)

CAUTION

- While sewing, keep your knee away from the knee lifter. If the knee lifter is pressed while the sewing machine is operating, the needle may break or the machine may be damaged.

Sewing hook-and-loop fastener

CAUTION

- Use only the ungummed hook-and-loop fastener which is for sewing. If the glue is attached to the needle or the bobbin hook race, it may cause malfunction.
- If the hook-and-loop fastener is sewn with the thin needle (65/9-75/11), the needle may bend or break.

Note

- Before start sewing, baste together the fabric and the hook-and-loop fastener.

Make sure that the needle passes through the hook-and-loop fastener by turning the handwheel and lower the needle into the hook-and-loop fastener before sewing. And then, sew the edge of the hook-and-loop fastener at a slow speed.

If the needle does not pass through the hook-and-loop fastener, replace the needle with the needle for thick fabrics (page 41).

![Image of hook-and-loop fastener](image)

1. Edge of the hook-and-loop fastener
UTILITY STITCHES

The various stitches and their applications are described in this chapter.

Stitch Setting Chart ....................... 70
Utility stitches ......................... 70
Other stitches .......................... 74
Selecting Stitching ....................... 77
Stitch types ............................ 77
Selecting stitching ..................... 77
Saving stitch settings ............... 79
Overcasting Stitches ..................... 81
Sewing overcasting stitches using overcasting foot “G” .......... 81
Sewing overcasting stitches using zigzag foot “J” .................. 82
Sewing overcasting stitches using the optional side cutter ......... 83
Basic Stitching ........................ 85
Basting .................................. 85
Basic stitching ........................ 85
Blind Hem Stitching .................... 87
Buttonhole Stitching/Button Sewing ... 89
  Buttonhole sewing .................. 90
  Button sewing ....................... 94
Zipper Insertion ......................................... 96
  Inserting a centered zipper ........ 96
  Inserting a side zipper ........... 98
Zipper/piping Insertion .................. 101
  Inserting a centered zipper .... 101
  Inserting a piping ................. 102
Sewing Stretch Fabrics and Elastic Tape ........................................ 103
  Stretch stitching .................. 103
  Elastic attaching .................. 103
Appliqué, Patchwork and Quilt Stitching ............................... 105
  Appliqué stitching ................. 106
  Patchwork (crazy quilt) stitching. 107
  Piecing ..................................... 107
  Quilting ................................. 109
  Free-motion quilting ............... 110
  Satin stitching using the sewing speed controller .................. 111
Reinforcement Stitching ................ 113
  Triple stretch stitching .......... 113
  Bar tack stitching .................. 113
  Darning .................................. 115
Eyelet Stitching .................................. 117
Horizontal Stitching .................... 118
Decorative Stitching .................... 120
  Fagoting .................................. 121
  Scallop stitching .................... 122
  Smocking ............................... 122
  Shell tuck stitching ................. 123
  Joining .................................. 124
  Heirloom stitching .................. 125
Sewing the Various Built-in Decorative Patterns ........................ 128
  Sewing beautiful patterns ....... 128
  Sewing patterns ...................... 128
  Changing the pattern size ........ 129
  Changing the stitch density ....... 129
  Changing the length
    for satin stitches .................. 130
    Shifting patterns .................. 131
    Combining patterns ............... 132
    Saving patterns ................... 135
    Realigning the pattern .......... 136
Designing a Pattern
  (My Custom Stitch) ................ 139
  Drawing a sketch of the pattern ... 139
  Entering the pattern data ........ 140
  Examples of designs ............... 142
## Stitch Setting Chart

Applications, stitch lengths and widths and whether the twin needle can be used are listed for utility stitches in the following table.

### Utility stitches

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Preser Foot</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Twin Needle Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitching</th>
<th>Walking Foot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Straight stitch</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>1 ▼ J</td>
<td>Basic stitching, sewing gathers or pintucks, etc.</td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>Yes (J) Reverse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Center</td>
<td>2 ▼ J</td>
<td>Basic stitching and sewing gathers or pintucks</td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>Yes (J) Reverse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3 ▼ J</td>
<td>Attaching zippers, basic stitching, sewing pintucks or pintucks, etc.</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>Yes (J) Reverse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triple stretch stitch</td>
<td></td>
<td>4 ▼ J</td>
<td>Attaching sleeves, sewing inseams, sewing stretch fabrics and decorative stitching</td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>Yes (J) Reverse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stretch stitch</td>
<td></td>
<td>5 ▼ J</td>
<td>Sewing stretch fabrics and decorative stitching</td>
<td>1.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>1.0–3.0 (1/16–1/8)</td>
<td>Yes (J) Reverse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basting stitch</td>
<td></td>
<td>6 ▼ J</td>
<td>Temporarily securing</td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>No Reinforcement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zigzag stitch</td>
<td>Center</td>
<td>7 ▼ J</td>
<td>Overcasting and attaching appliqués</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>Yes (J) Reverse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Right</td>
<td>8 ▼ J</td>
<td>Beginning sewing from the right needle position</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>2.5–5.0 (3/32–3/16)</td>
<td>Yes (J) Reverse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-point zigzag stitch</td>
<td></td>
<td>9 ▼ J</td>
<td>Overcasting on medium weight or stretch fabrics, attaching elastic, darners, etc.</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>Yes (J) Reverse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-point zigzag stitch</td>
<td></td>
<td>10 ▼ J</td>
<td>Overcasting on medium weight or stretch fabrics, attaching elastic, darners, etc.</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>Yes (J) Reverse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overcasting stitch</td>
<td></td>
<td>11 ▼ G</td>
<td>Overcasting on thin or medium weight fabrics</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>2.5–5.0 (3/32–3/16)</td>
<td>No Reinforcement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12 ▼ G</td>
<td>Overcasting on thick fabrics</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>2.5–5.0 (3/32–3/16)</td>
<td>No Reinforcement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>13 ▼ G</td>
<td>Preventing fraying in thick fabrics and fabrics that fray easily</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>3.5–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>No Reinforcement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>14 ▼ J</td>
<td>Overcasting on stretch fabrics</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>Yes (J) Reverse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15 ▼ J</td>
<td>Overcasting on thick or stretch fabrics</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>Yes (J) Reverse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16 ▼ J</td>
<td>Overcasting on stretch fabrics and decorative stitching</td>
<td>4.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>Yes (J) Reverse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stitch Name</td>
<td>Pattern</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>Preser Foot</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</td>
<td>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</td>
<td>Twin Needle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blind hem stitch</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>Blind hem stitching on medium weight fabrics</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>1.0–3.5 (1/16–1/8)</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R</td>
<td>Blind hem stitching on stretch fabrics</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>1.0–3.5 (1/16–1/8)</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appliqué stitch</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Appliqué stitching</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>2.5–7.0 (3/32–1/4)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shell tuck stitch</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Shell tuck stitching</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>4.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piecing straight stitch</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Piecing straight stitching with a seam allowance of 6.5 mm (1/4 inch) from the right edge of the presser foot</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>5.5 (7/32)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Straight stitch that looks hand-sewn (for quilting)</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Straight stitch quilting that looks hand-sewn</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zigzag stitch (for quilting)</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Appliqué quilting, free-motion quilting, satin stitching</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>1.4 (1/16)</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appliqué stitch (for quilting)</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Attaching appliqués and binding</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>1.5 (1/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quilting stitch (for stippling)</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Quilting background stitching (stippling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>7.0 (1/4)</td>
<td>1.0–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>1.6 (1/16)</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satin scallop stitch</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Scallop stitching</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>2.5–7.0 (3/32–1/4)</td>
<td>0.5 (1/32)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Patchwork stitching and decorative stitching</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>4.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>1.2 (1/16)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Patchwork stitching, decorative stitching and sewing overcasting on both pieces of fabric, such as with tricot</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>2.5–7.0 (3/32–1/4)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Patchwork stitching and decorative stitching</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>1.2 (1/16)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smocking stitch</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Smocking stitching and decorative stitching</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>1.6 (1/16)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fagoting stitch</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Fagoting and decorative stitching</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elastic-attaching stitch</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Attaching elastic to stretch fabrics</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>4.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>1.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ladder stitch</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Decorative stitching</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>4.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>3.0 (1/8)</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rick-rack stitch</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Decorative stitching</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>4.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stitch Name</td>
<td>Pattern</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</td>
<td>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</td>
<td>Twin Needle</td>
<td>Reverse/Reinforcement Stitching</td>
<td>Walking Foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decorative stitch</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Decorative stitching</td>
<td>5.5 (7/32)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>1.6 (1/16)</td>
<td>1.0–4.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>Yes (J)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serpentine stitch</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Decorative stitching and elastic-attaching</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>1.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>0.2–4.0 (1/64–3/16)</td>
<td>Yes (J)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lace sewing, decorative hemming, heirloom stitching, etc.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
<td>1.6–4.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decorative hemming, heirloom stitching, etc.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>6.0 (15/64)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>3.0 (1/8)</td>
<td>1.5–4.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decorative hemming on thin, medium weight and plain weave fabrics, heirloom stitching, etc.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>1.5–4.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decorative hemming on thin, medium weight and plain weave fabrics, heirloom stitching, etc.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>4.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–4.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>Yes (J)</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decorative hemming on thin, medium weight and plain weave fabrics, heirloom stitching, etc.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>1.5–4.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>Yes (J)</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decorative hemming, ribbon threading, heirloom stitching, etc.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>3.0 (1/8)</td>
<td>1.5–4.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>Yes (J)</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decorative stitching, smocking stitching, heirloom stitching, etc.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>6.0 (15/64)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>1.6 (1/16)</td>
<td>1.0–4.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decorative stitching, smocking stitching, heirloom stitching, etc.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>1.6 (1/16)</td>
<td>1.0–4.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal buttonholes on thin and medium weight fabrics</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>3.0–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>0.4 (1/64)</td>
<td>0.2–1.0 (1/64–1/16)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Automatic reinforcement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal buttonholes on areas that are subject to strain</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>3.0–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>0.4 (1/64)</td>
<td>0.2–1.0 (1/64–1/16)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Automatic reinforcement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal buttonholes on thick fabrics</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>3.0–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>0.4 (1/64)</td>
<td>0.2–1.0 (1/64–1/16)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Automatic reinforcement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secured buttonholes for fabrics that have backings</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>3.0–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>0.4 (1/64)</td>
<td>0.2–1.0 (1/64–1/16)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Automatic reinforcement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buttonholes for stretch or knit fabrics</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>6.0 (15/54)</td>
<td>3.0–6.0 (1/8–15/64)</td>
<td>1.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>0.5–2.0 (1/32–1/16)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Automatic reinforcement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buttonholes for stretch fabrics</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>6.0 (15/54)</td>
<td>3.0–6.0 (1/8–15/64)</td>
<td>1.5 (1/16)</td>
<td>1.0–3.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Automatic reinforcement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bound buttonholes</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–6.0 (0–15/64)</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>0.2–4.0 (1/64–3/16)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Automatic reinforcement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stitch Name</td>
<td>Pattern</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</td>
<td>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</td>
<td>Twin Needle</td>
<td>Reverse/Reinforcement Stitching</td>
<td>Walking Foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Buttonhole stitch</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Keyhole buttonholes for thick or furry fabrics</td>
<td>7.0 (1/4)</td>
<td>3.0–7.0 (1/8–1/4)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>No Automatic reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Keyhole buttonholes for medium weight and thick fabrics</td>
<td>7.0 (1/4)</td>
<td>3.0–7.0 (1/8–1/4)</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>No Automatic reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Horizontal buttonholes for thick or furry fabrics</td>
<td>7.0 (1/4)</td>
<td>3.0–7.0 (1/8–1/4)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>No Automatic reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Darning stitch</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Darning medium weight fabrics</td>
<td>7.0 (1/4)</td>
<td>2.5–7.0 (3/32–1/4)</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>No Automatic reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Darning thick fabrics</td>
<td>7.0 (1/4)</td>
<td>2.5–7.0 (3/32–1/4)</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>No Automatic reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bar tack stitch</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Reinforcing openings and areas where the seam easily comes loose</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>1.0–3.0 (1/16–1/8)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>No Automatic reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Button-sewing stitch</strong></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Button sewing</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>2.5–4.5 (3/32–3/16)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>No Automatic reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Eyelet stitch</strong></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Sewing eyelets, for example, on belts</td>
<td>7.0 (1/4)</td>
<td>7.0, 6.0, 5.0 (1/4, 15/64, 3/16)</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>No Automatic reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>Sewing straight stitches while cutting the fabric</td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>0.0–2.5 (0–3/32)</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>No Reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>Sewing zigzag stitches while cutting the fabric</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>3.5–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>No Reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Side cutter</strong></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>Overcasting on thin and medium weight fabrics while cutting the fabric</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>3.5–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>No Reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>Overcasting on thick fabrics while cutting the fabric</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>3.5–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>No Reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>Overcasting on medium weight and thick fabrics while cutting the fabric</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>3.5–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>No Reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Horizontal straight stitch</strong></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Attaching appliqués to sleeves (straight stitch sewn to the left)</td>
<td>– – – – –</td>
<td>– – – –</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>No Reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Attaching appliqués to sleeves (straight stitch sewn to the right)</td>
<td>– – – – –</td>
<td>– – – –</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>No Reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Horizontal zigzag stitch</strong></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Attaching appliqués to sleeves (zigzag stitch sewn to the left)</td>
<td>– – – – –</td>
<td>– – – –</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>No Reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Attaching appliqués to sleeves (zigzag stitch sewn to the right)</td>
<td>– – – – –</td>
<td>– – – –</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>No Reinforcement</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Other stitches

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Type</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
<th>Twin Needle</th>
<th>Pattern Size</th>
<th>Adjustable Stitching Density</th>
<th>Adjustable Pattern Length/width</th>
<th>Left/Right Flipping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Decorative stitches</strong></td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image8" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image9" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image10" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image11" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image12" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image13" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image14" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image15" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image16" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image17" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image18" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image19" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image20" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image21" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image22" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image23" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image24" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image25" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image26" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image27" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image28" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image29" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image30" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image31" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Satin stitches</strong></td>
<td><img src="image32" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image33" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image34" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image35" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image36" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image37" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image38" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image39" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image40" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image41" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image42" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image43" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image44" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image45" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image46" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image47" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image48" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image49" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image50" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image51" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image52" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image53" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image54" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image55" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image56" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image57" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image58" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image59" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image60" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image61" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image62" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cross-stitches</strong></td>
<td><img src="image63" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image64" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image65" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image66" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image67" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image68" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image69" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image70" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image71" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image72" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image73" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image74" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image75" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image76" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image77" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image78" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image79" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image80" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image81" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image82" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image83" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image84" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image85" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Decorative satin stitches</strong></td>
<td><img src="image86" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image87" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image88" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image89" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image90" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image91" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image92" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image93" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image94" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image95" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image96" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image97" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image98" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image99" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image100" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image101" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image102" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image103" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image104" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image105" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image106" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image107" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image108" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image109" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image110" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image111" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image112" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image113" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image114" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image115" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image116" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Combined utility stitches</strong></td>
<td><img src="image117" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image118" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image119" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image120" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image121" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image122" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image123" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image124" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image125" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image126" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image127" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image128" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image129" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image130" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image131" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image132" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image133" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image134" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image135" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image136" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image137" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image138" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image139" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image140" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image141" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image142" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image143" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image144" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image145" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image146" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td><img src="image147" alt="Pattern" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

** Pattern for making adjustment
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Type</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
<th>Twin Needle</th>
<th>Pattern Size</th>
<th>Adjustable Stitching Density</th>
<th>Adjustable Pattern Length/Width</th>
<th>Left/Right Flipping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Character stitches (Gothic font)</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Large, Small</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character stitches (Script font)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Large</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stitch Type</td>
<td>Pattern</td>
<td>Presser Foot</td>
<td>Twin Needle</td>
<td>Pattern Size</td>
<td>Adjustable Stitching Density</td>
<td>Adjustable Pattern Length/width</td>
<td>Left/Right Flipping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Large, Small</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Character stitches (Outline style)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Type</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
<th>Twin Needle</th>
<th>Pattern Size</th>
<th>Adjustable Stitching Density</th>
<th>Adjustable Pattern Length/width</th>
<th>Left/Right Flipping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Large, Small</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Selecting Stitching

This section provides details on the various types of stitches available and the procedure for selecting a stitch.

Stitch types

A stitch can be selected from the following types available. For details on the various stitches, refer to “Stitch Setting Chart” (page 70).

- **Utility stitches**
  You can select from 71 utility stitches, including straight line stitching, overcasting, button holes and basic decorative stitches. If this is selected, the utility stitch selection appears right after the power is turned on.

- **My Custom Stitch**
  You can design original stitches. (For details, refer to “Designing a Pattern (My Custom Stitch)” (page 139).)

- **Character stitches—Gothic font**
  (Can be combined)
  There are 97 characters, including letters, symbols and numbers, in the Gothic font.

- **Character stitches—Script font**
  (Can be combined)
  There are 97 characters, including letters, symbols and numbers, in the Script font.

- **Character stitches—Outline style**
  (Can be combined)
  There are 97 characters, including letters, symbols and numbers, in the outline style.

- **Decorative stitches**
  (Can be combined)
  You can select from 31 decorative stitches, including leaves, flowers and hearts. You can sew combinations of multiple decorative stitches.

- **Satin stitches**
  (Can be combined)
  You can select from 18 satin stitches. You can sew combinations of multiple decorative stitches.

- **Combined utility stitches**
  (Can be combined)
  You can sew with combinations from 39 utility stitches.

- **Decorative satin stitches**
  (Can be combined)
  There are 10 decorative satin stitches.

- **Cross stitches**
  (Can be combined)
  You can select from 15 cross stitches. You can sew combinations of multiple decorative stitches.

- **Patterns saved in the machine’s memory**
  You can retrieve a saved pattern. (For details, refer to “Saving patterns” (page 135).)

Selecting stitching

1. **Turn on the sewing machine.**
   - When an animation is displayed on the screen, touch the screen with your finger.
   - The straight stitch (left needle position) is shown selected on the screen.

2. **Press** (Utility stitch key) on the operation panel.
   - The screen containing the various types of stitches appears.
Select the stitch type.

- When a decorative stitch is selected

The screen containing the various stitches in the selected stitch type appears.

- To select a different stitch type, press [Back key].

Press the stitch selection.

[Previous page key] displays the previous screen, and [Next page key] displays the next screen.

If necessary, specify the setting for automatic reverse/reinforcement stitching and adjust the stitch length, etc.

- For details on sewing with each of the utility stitches, begin on page 81.

**Note**

- When a stitch is selected, the icon for the presser foot that should be used appears on the screen. Check that the correct presser foot is attached before starting to sew. If the wrong presser foot is installed, turn off the sewing machine, attach the correct presser foot, and then select the desired stitch again.

**Memo**

- For details on adjusting the stitch width and length, refer to “Adjusting the stitch width” (page 58) and “Adjusting the stitch length” (page 59).

### Selecting characters

Three styles of character stitches are available. The procedure for selecting a character is the same with all styles.

1. **Follow steps 1 and 2 in “Selecting stitching” (page 77) to display the screen where a stitch type can be selected.**

2. **Select the character style.**

3. **Select the characters.**

   - If a wrong character was selected, press [DELETE] to erase the character, and then select the correct character.
   - To select a different character style, press [Back key], and then select the new character style.
   - Press [CHECK] to view a sample of the selected pattern.
   - To enter a space, press “_”. 

① Decorative stitch selection
② Set width, length and tension
③ Large pattern size
④ Small pattern size
⑤ Single stitch sewing
⑥ Repeat sewing
⑦ Horizontal mirror image
⑧ Delete a selected pattern
⑨ Check combined pattern
⑩ Automatic thread cutting
⑪ Automatic reverse/reinforcement stitch

- To select a different stitch, press [DELETE] to remove the selected pattern.
Example: Bus

Saving stitch settings

This machine is preset with the default settings for the stitch width (zigzag width), stitch length, thread tension, programmed thread cutting, and automatic reverse/reinforcement stitching for each stitch. However, if you wish to save specific settings for a stitch so that they can be used later, press \[ \text{Memory} \] after changing the settings to save the new settings with the selected stitch. This feature can be used only with utility stitches.

- To use a stitch length of 2.0 mm for the straight stitch

1. Select a straight stitch.
2. Press \[ \text{Memory} \].

Memo

- The default stitch length is 2.5 mm.

3. Set the stitch length to 2.0 mm.

4. Press \[ \text{Memory} \].

- To reset the selected stitch pattern to its default settings, press \[ \text{Reset} \], and then press \[ \text{Memory} \].

The confirmation message is displayed.
Press **OK**.

![OK to save the current settings?](image)

**Note**
- The next time that the same straight stitch is selected, the stitch length is set to 2.0 mm.
- All stitch settings (stitch width (zigzag width), stitch length, thread tension, programmed thread cutting, and automatic reverse/reinforcement stitching, etc.) are saved, not just the setting that was changed. When the same stitch pattern is selected, the last settings saved are displayed even if the machine was turned off. If the settings are changed again, or if **RESET** is pressed to reset the setting to its default, the new settings are not saved unless **MEM-OFF** is pressed another time.

Even if **RESET** is pressed, the settings for programmed thread cutting and automatic reverse/reinforcement stitching cannot be reset.
Overcasting Stitches

Sew overcasting stitches along the edges of cut fabric to prevent fabric from fraying. 15 stitches are available for overcasting. The procedure for sewing overcasting stitch is explained according to the presser foot that is used.

Sewing overcasting stitches using overcasting foot “G”

Three stitches can be used to sew overcasting with overcasting foot “G”.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overcasting stitch 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Preventing fraying in medium weight and thin fabrics</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overcasting stitch 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Preventing fraying in thick fabrics and fabrics that fray easily</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overcasting stitch 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Attach overcasting foot “G”.
   • For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

2. Select a stitch.
   • For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

3. Position the fabric with the edge of the fabric against the guide of the presser foot, and then lower the presser foot lever.

4. Sew with the edge of the fabric against the presser foot guide.

   ① Needle drop point
Sewing overcasting stitches using zigzag foot “J”

Seven stitches can be used to sew overcasting stitches with zigzag foot “J”.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Auto</th>
<th>Manual</th>
<th>Auto</th>
<th>Manual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zigzag stitch (center needle position)</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Preventing fraying (center baseline/reverse stitching)</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>1.4 (1/16)</td>
<td>0.0–4.0 (0–3/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zigzag stitch (right needle position)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Preventing fraying (right baseline/reinforcement stitching)</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>2.5–5.0 (3/32–3/16)</td>
<td>1.4 (1/16)</td>
<td>0.3–4.0 (1/64–3/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-point zigzag stitch</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Preventing fraying in thick fabrics and stretch fabrics</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>1.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>0.2–4.0 (1/64–3/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-point zigzag stitch</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Preventing fraying in thick fabrics</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>1.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>0.2–4.0 (1/64–3/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overcasting stitch</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Preventing fraying in stretch fabrics</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
<td>0.5–4.0 (1/32–3/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Preventing fraying in thick fabrics and stretch fabrics</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
<td>0.5–4.0 (1/32–3/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Preventing fraying in stretch fabrics</td>
<td>4.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>4.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.0–4.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Attach zigzag foot “J”.

2. Select a stitch.

3. Sew along the edge of the fabric with the needle dropping off the edge at the right.

   - For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

   - For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).
Sewing overcasting stitches using the optional side cutter

Using the side cutter, seam allowances can be finished while the edge of the fabric is cut off. Five stitches can be used to sew overcasting stitches with the side cutter.

**Note**
- Thread the needle manually when using the side cutter, or only attach the side cutter after threading the needle using the needle threader.

### Stitch Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side Cutter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sewing straight stitches while cutting the fabric</td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>0.0–2.5 (0–3/32)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sewing zigzag stitches while cutting the fabric</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>3.5–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>1.4 (1/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td></td>
<td>Preventing fraying in thin and medium weight fabrics while cutting the fabric</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>3.5–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td></td>
<td>Preventing fraying in thick fabrics while cutting the fabric</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>3.5–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td></td>
<td>Preventing fraying in thick fabrics while cutting the fabric</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>3.5–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Instructions

1. Remove the presser foot.
   - For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).
2. Hook the connecting fork of the side cutter onto the needle clamp screw.
3. Position the side cutter so that side cutter pin is aligned with the notch in the presser foot holder, and then slowly lower the presser foot lever.

---

**Overcasting Stitches** 83
4. Raise the presser foot lever to check that the side cutter is securely attached.

5. Pass the upper thread under the side cutter, and then pull it out toward the rear of the sewing machine.

6. Select a stitch.
   - For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

7. Make a cut of about 2 cm (3/4 inch) long in the fabric at the beginning of the stitching.

   The cut in the fabric should be positioned over the guide plate of the side cutter.

9. Lower the presser foot lever, and then start sewing.
   - A seam allowance is cut while the stitching is sewn.
     - If the stitching is sewn in a straight line, the seam allowance will be about 5 mm (3/16 inch).

Memo
- The side cutter can cut as much as one layer of 13-oz. denim.
- After using the side cutter, clean it by removing any lint or dust.
- If the side cutter can no longer cut fabric, use a rag to apply a small amount of oil to the cutting edge of the cutter.
Basic Stitching

Straight stitches are used for sewing plain seams. Five stitches are available for basic stitching.

### Basic Stitching

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basting stitch</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Temporarily securing</td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Straight stitch (left needle position)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Basic stitching and sewing gathers or pintucks (left baseline/reverse stitching)</td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Straight stitch (center needle position)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Basic stitching and sewing gathers or pintucks (left baseline/reinforcement stitching)</td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Straight stitch (center needle position)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Basic stitching and sewing gathers or pintucks (center baseline/reverse stitching)</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triple stretch stitch</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Reinforcing seams and sewing stretch fabrics</td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>J</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Basting

Sew basting with a stitch length between 5 mm (3/16 inch) and 30 mm (1-3/16 inches).

1. **Attach zigzag foot “J”**.
   - For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

2. **Select stitch 6**.
   - For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

3. **Start sewing**.
   - For details, refer to “Starting to sew” (page 53).

### Basic stitching

1. **Baste or pin together the fabric pieces.**

2. **Attach zigzag foot “J”**.
   - For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

3. **Select a stitch**.
   - For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

4. **Lower the needle into the fabric at the beginning of the stitching**.
5 Lower the presser foot lever, and then start sewing.
   • For details, refer to “Starting to sew” (page 53).
   • For details on sewing reverse/reinforcement stitches, refer to “Securing the stitching” (page 55).

6 When sewing is finished, cut the thread.
   • For details, refer to “Cutting the thread” (page 56).

---

■ Changing the needle position

The needle position used as the baseline is different for the straight stitch (left needle position) and the straight stitch (center needle position).

When the stitch width of the straight stitch (left needle position) is set to its standard setting (0.0 mm), the distance from the needle position to the right side of the presser foot is 12 mm (1/2 inch). If the stitch width is changed (between 0 and 7.0 mm (1/4 inch)), the needle position will also change. By changing the stitch width and sewing with the right side of the presser foot aligned with the edge of the fabric, a seam allowance can be sewn with a fixed width.

• For details, refer to “Adjusting the stitch width” (page 58).
Blind Hem Stitching

Secure the bottoms of skirts and pants with a blind hem. Two stitches are available for blind hem stitching.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blind hem stitch</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>Blind hem stitching on medium weight fabrics</td>
<td>00 (0)</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3← → 3</td>
<td>1.0–3.5 (1/16–1/8)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td>Blind hem stitching on stretch fabrics</td>
<td>00 (0)</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3← → 3</td>
<td>1.0–3.5 (1/16–1/8)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sew a blind hem according to the following procedure.

1. **Fold the fabric along the desired edge of the hem, and then baste it about 5 mm (3/16 inch) from the edge of the fabric.**

   ![Diagram of step 1]

   - Wrong side of fabric
   - Basting stitching
   - Desired edge of hem
   - 5 mm (3/16 inch)

2. **Fold back the fabric along the basting, and then position the fabric with the wrong side facing up.**

   ![Diagram of step 2]

   - Wrong side of fabric
   - Basting

3. **Attach blind hem foot “R”.**

   ![Diagram of step 3]

   • For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

4. **Select a stitch.**

   ![Diagram of step 4]

   • For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

5. **Position the fabric with the edge of the folded hem against the guide of the presser foot, and then lower the presser foot lever.**

   ![Diagram of step 5]

   - Wrong side of fabric
   - Fold of hem
   - Guide
Adjust the stitch width until the needle slightly catches the fold of the hem.

- Needle drop point
  When you change the needle drop point, raise the needle, and then change the stitch width.

- Stitch width

- If the needle catches too much of the hem fold
  The needle is too far to the left. Press [-] to decrease the stitch width so that the needle slightly catches the fold of the hem.

- If the needle does not catch the hem fold
  The needle is too far to the right. Press [+] to increase the stitch width so that the needle slightly catches the fold of the hem.

- For details, refer to “Adjusting the stitch width” (page 58).

Sew with the fold of the hem against the presser foot guide.

Remove the basting stitching.

- Wrong side of fabric
- Right side of fabric
## Buttonhole Stitching/Button Sewing

Buttonholes can be sewn and buttons can be sewn on. 10 stitches are available for sewing one-step buttonholes and one stitch for sewing on buttons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buttonhole stitch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>48</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Horizontal buttonholes on thin and medium weight fabrics</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>3.0–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>0.4 (1/64)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Horizontal buttonholes on areas that are subject to strain</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>3.0–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>0.4 (1/64)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Horizontal buttonholes on thick fabrics</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>3.0–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>0.4 (1/64)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Buttonholes with bar tacks on both ends for stabilized fabrics</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>3.0–5.0 (1/8–3/16)</td>
<td>0.4 (1/64)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>52</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Buttonholes for stretch or knit fabrics</td>
<td>6.0 (15/64)</td>
<td>3.0–6.0 (1/8–15/64)</td>
<td>1.0 (1/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>53</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Buttonholes for stretch fabrics</td>
<td>6.0 (15/64)</td>
<td>3.0–6.0 (1/8–15/64)</td>
<td>1.5 (1/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>54</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bound buttonholes</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–6.0 (0–15/64)</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>55</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Keyhole buttonholes for thick or plush fabrics</td>
<td>7.0 (1/4)</td>
<td>3.0–7.0 (1/8–1/4)</td>
<td>0.5 (1/32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>56</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Keyhole buttonholes for medium weight and thick fabrics</td>
<td>7.0 (1/4)</td>
<td>3.0–7.0 (1/8–1/4)</td>
<td>0.5 (1/32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>57</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Horizontal buttonhole for thick or plush fabrics</td>
<td>7.0 (1/4)</td>
<td>3.0–7.0 (1/8–1/4)</td>
<td>0.5 (1/32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Button-sewing stitch</td>
<td></td>
<td>Button sewing</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>2.5–4.5 (3/32–3/16)</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Buttonhole sewing

The maximum buttonhole length is about 28 mm (1-1/8 inches) (diameter + thickness of the button). Buttonholes are sewn from the front of the presser foot to the back, as shown below.

1. Reinforcement stitching

The names of parts of buttonhole foot “A”, which is used for sewing buttonholes, are indicated below.

1. Use chalk to mark on the fabric the position and length of the buttonhole.

2. Pull out the button guide plate of buttonhole foot “A”, and then insert the button that will be put through the buttonhole.

① Button guide plate
② Presser foot scale
③ Pin
④ Marks on buttonhole foot
⑤ 5 mm (3/16 inch)
If the button does not fit in the button guide plate
Add together the diameter and thickness of the button, and then set the button guide plate to the calculated length. (The distance between the markings on the presser foot scale is 5 mm (3/16 inch).)

Example: For a button with a diameter of 15 mm (9/16 inch) and a thickness of 10 mm (3/8 inch), the button guide plate should be set to 25 mm (1 inch) on the scale.

Select a stitch.

Position the fabric with the front end of the buttonhole mark aligned with the red marks on the sides of the buttonhole foot, and then lower the presser foot lever.

Attach buttonhole foot “A”.
- For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

- For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).
- When lowering the presser foot, do not push in the front of the presser foot.
6 Pull down the buttonhole lever as far as possible.

7 Gently hold the end of the upper thread in your left hand, and then start sewing.

8 Press ("Thread Cutter" button) once.

   The threads are cut, and the needle is raised.

   Raise the presser foot, and then remove the fabric.

Memo

- If the automatic thread cutting setting was selected before sewing, the machine will automatically cut the threads at the end of the stitching. For details, refer to "Automatically cutting the thread" (page 62).
- When using the thread cutter on the left side of the machine or scissors to cut the threads, press ("Needle Position" button) to raise the needle, raise the presser foot, and then pull out the fabric before cutting the threads. For details, refer to "Using the thread cutter" (page 57).

9 Raise the buttonhole lever to its original position.

10 Insert a pin along the inside of one bar tack at the end of the buttonhole stitching to prevent the stitching from being cut.

11 Use the seam ripper to cut towards the pin and open the buttonhole.

Press ("Thread Cutter" button) once.

   The threads are cut, and the needle is raised.

   Raise the presser foot, and then remove the fabric.

Memo

- If the automatic thread cutting setting was selected before sewing, the machine will automatically cut the threads at the end of the stitching. For details, refer to "Automatically cutting the thread" (page 62).
- When using the thread cutter on the left side of the machine or scissors to cut the threads, press ("Needle Position" button) to raise the needle, raise the presser foot, and then pull out the fabric before cutting the threads. For details, refer to "Using the thread cutter" (page 57).

9 Raise the buttonhole lever to its original position.

10 Insert a pin along the inside of one bar tack at the end of the buttonhole stitching to prevent the stitching from being cut.

11 Use the seam ripper to cut towards the pin and open the buttonhole.

Press ("Thread Cutter" button) once.

   The threads are cut, and the needle is raised.

   Raise the presser foot, and then remove the fabric.

Memo

- If the automatic thread cutting setting was selected before sewing, the machine will automatically cut the threads at the end of the stitching. For details, refer to "Automatically cutting the thread" (page 62).
- When using the thread cutter on the left side of the machine or scissors to cut the threads, press ("Needle Position" button) to raise the needle, raise the presser foot, and then pull out the fabric before cutting the threads. For details, refer to "Using the thread cutter" (page 57).
When using the eyelet punch, place thick paper or some other protective sheet under the fabric before punching the hole in the fabric.

**CAUTION**

- When opening the buttonhole with the seam ripper, do not place your hands in the cutting direction, otherwise injuries may result if the seam ripper slips.
- Do not use the seam ripper in any other way than how it is intended.

**Changing the density of the stitching**

Adjust the stitch length.

![Image of stitch length adjustment](image1)

- For details, refer to “Adjusting the stitch length” (page 59).
- If the fabric does not feed (for example, if it is too thick), decrease the density of the stitching.

**Changing the stitch width**

Adjust the stitch width.

![Image of stitch width adjustment](image2)

- For details, refer to “Adjusting the stitch width” (page 58).

**Memo**

- Before sewing buttonholes, check the stitch length and width by sewing a trial buttonhole on a scrap piece of fabric.

**Sewing buttonholes on stretch fabrics**

When sewing buttonholes on stretch fabrics, use a gimp thread.

1. **Hook the gimp thread onto the part of buttonhole foot “A” shown in the illustration.**

![Image of hooking gimp thread](image3)

2. It fits into the grooves, and then loosely tie it.

![Image of tying gimp thread](image4)

3. **Attach buttonhole foot “A”.**

- For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

4. **Select stitch 52 or 53.**

5. **Adjust the stitch width to the thickness of the gimp thread.**

6. **Lower the presser foot lever and the buttonhole lever, and then start sewing.**

7. When sewing is finished, gently pull the gimp thread to remove any slack.

![Image of pulling gimp thread](image5)

8. **Use a handsewing needle to pull the gimp thread to the wrong side of the fabric, and then tie it.**

![Image of tying gimp thread on the wrong side](image6)
**Button sewing**

Buttons can be sewn on with the sewing machine. Buttons with two or with four holes can be attached.

1. Measure the distance between the holes in the button to be attached.

2. Raise the presser foot lever, and then slide the drop feed lever, located at the rear of the machine on the base, to \( \text{T} \) (to the left as seen from the rear of the machine).

3. Attach button-sewing foot “M”.

4. Select stitch 61.  

   - For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).
   - Since the end of the thread will be tied off later, do not set the sewing machine for programmed-thread cutting.

5. Adjust the stitch width so that it is the same as the distance between the holes in the button.

6. Place the button in the position where it will be sewn, and lower the presser foot lever.

   - When attaching four-hole buttons, first sew the two holes closest to you. Then, slide the button so that the needle goes into the two holes toward the rear of the sewing machine, and then sew them in the same way.
7 Turn the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to check that the needle correctly goes into the two holes of the button. If it seems as if the needle will hit the button, remeasure the distance between the holes in the button. Adjust the stitch width to the distance between the button holes.

8 Start sewing. Set the sewing speed controller to the left (so that the speed will be slow).

- The sewing machine automatically stops after sewing reinforcement stitches.
- Do not press \(\text{folios} \) ("Thread Cutter" button).
- If additional strength is needed to secure the button, perform the button-sewing operation twice.

9 Use scissors to cut the upper thread and the bobbin thread at the beginning of the stitching. Pull the upper thread at the end of the stitching to the wrong side of the fabric, and then tie it with the bobbin thread.

10 When you are finished attaching the button, slide the drop feed lever to \(\text{folios} \) (to the right as seen from the rear of the machine) and turn the handwheel to raise the feed dogs.

**Memo**
- The feed dog position switch is normally set to the right side (as seen from the rear of machine).
- The feed dogs come up when you start sewing again.

---

**Attaching a shank to a button**

To sew the button with a shank, attach the button with space between it and the fabric, and then wind the thread by hand. This attaches the button securely.

1 Place the button into button-sewing foot “M”, and then pull the shank lever toward you.

2 After sewing is finished, cut the upper thread with plenty of excess, wind it around the thread between the button and the fabric, and then tie it to the upper thread at the beginning of the stitching. Tie together the ends of the bobbin thread at the end and at the beginning of the stitching on the wrong side of the fabric.

3 Cut off any excess thread.
Zipper Insertion

A zipper can be sewn in place.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Straightstitch</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Attaching zippers</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(center needle position)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sewing concealed seams and pintucks</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
<td>0.2–5.0 (1/64–3/16)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are many methods for inserting zippers. The procedures for inserting a centered zipper and a side zipper are described below.

**Inserting a centered zipper**

Stitching is sewn on both pieces of fabric butted against each other.

1. **Attach zigzag foot “J”**.
2. **Sew straight stitches up to the zipper opening**.

With the right sides of the fabric facing each other, sew reverse stitches after reaching the zipper opening.

- For details, refer to “Basic stitching” (page 85).

3. **Using a basting stitch, continue sewing to the edge of the fabric.**

4. **Press open the seam allowance from the wrong side of the fabric.**

① Right side of fabric
② Stitching
③ End of zipper opening
④ Basting stitching
⑤ Reverse stitches
⑥ Wrong side of fabric
⑦ End of zipper opening
⑧ Wrong side of fabric
Align the seam with the center of the zipper, and then baste the zipper in place.

Remove about 5 cm (2 inches) from the end of the basting on the outside.

Attach the presser foot holder to the right pin of zipper foot “I”.

Select stitch $3$.

Topstitch around the zipper.

Remove the basting stitching.
**Inserting a side zipper**

Stitching is visible on only one piece of fabric. Use this type of zipper application for side openings and back openings.

1. **Attach zigzag foot “J”**.

2. **Sew straight stitches up to the zipper opening.**
   - With the right sides of the fabric facing each other, sew reverse stitches after reaching the zipper opening.
   - For details, refer to “Basic stitching” (page 85).

3. **Using a basting stitch, continue sewing to the edge of the fabric.**

4. **Press open the seam allowance from the wrong side of the fabric.**

5. **Press the seam allowance so that the right side (the side that will not be stitched) has an extra 3 mm (1/8 inch).**

6. **Align the zipper teeth with the pressed edge of the fabric having the extra 3 mm (1/8 inch), and then baste or pin the zipper in place.**

7. **Attach the presser foot holder to the right pin of zipper foot “I”**.
   - If the stitching will be sewn on the right side, attach the presser foot holder to the left pin of the zipper foot.

---

1. Stitching  
2. Right side of fabric  
3. End of zipper opening

The following procedure will describe how to stitch on the left side, as shown in the illustration.

1. Correct stitch
2. Wrong side of fabric
3. End of zipper opening

---

1. Wrong side of fabric  
2. 3 mm (1/8 inch)

---

1. Zipper teeth  
2. Basting stitching

---

1. Pin on the right side  
2. Needle drop point

- For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).
Select stitch 3.

For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

**CAUTION**

- When using zipper foot “I”, be sure to select the straight stitch (center needle position), and slowly turn the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to check that the needle does not touch the presser foot. If a different stitch is selected or the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may bend or break.

Sew the zipper to the piece of fabric with the extra 3 mm (1/8 inch), starting from the base of the zipper.

**CAUTION**

- When sewing, be sure that the needle does not touch the zipper, otherwise the needle may bend or break.

When you are about 5 cm (2 inches) from the end of the zipper, stop the sewing machine with the needle lowered (in the fabric), raise the presser foot lever.

Open the zipper and continue sewing.

Close the zipper, turn over the fabric, and then baste the other side of the zipper to the fabric.

Attach the presser foot holder to the other pin of zipper foot “I”.

If the presser foot holder was attached to the right pin in step g, change it to the left pin.

Basting stitching

Pin on the left side

Needle drop point
14 Topstitch around the zipper.
Sew reverse stitches at the end of the zipper opening and align the zipper teeth with the side of the presser foot.

① Right side of fabric
② End of zipper opening
③ Reverse stitches
④ Beginning of stitching
⑤ Basting stitching

⚠️ CAUTION
● When sewing, be sure that the needle does not touch the zipper, otherwise the needle may bend or break.

15 When you are about 5 cm (2 inches) from the end of the zipper, stop the sewing machine with the needle lowered (in the fabric), raise the presser foot lever, and then open the zipper and continue sewing.

16 Remove the basting stitching.
Zipper/piping Insertion

A zipper and piping can be sewn in place.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Straightstitch</strong>&lt;br&gt;(left needle position)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Pattern" /></td>
<td>Attaching zippers Sewing concealed seams and piping</td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.2–5.0 (1/64–3/16)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are many methods for inserting zippers and pipings. The procedures for inserting a centered zipper and a piping are described below, with the adjustable zipper/piping foot.

**Inserting a centered zipper**

1. Refer to step 1–3 of “Inserting a centered zipper” (page 96).
2. Remove the presser foot and presser foot holder (page 46) to attach the screw-on adjustable zipper/piping foot.

**Note**

- Use a screw driver to securely tighten the screw that holds the presser foot. If the screw is loose, the needle may break and cause injuries.

3. Select stitch ![Pattern](image).

4. Loosen the positioning screw on the back of the presser foot.

5. Slide the presser foot over either the left or right feed dog.

6. Change the needle position so that the needle does not touch the presser foot.
   
   For details, refer to “Adjusting the stitch width” (page 58).

![Diagram](image)
**CAUTION**

- After adjusting the needle position, slowly turn the handwheel toward you and check the needle does not touch (counterclockwise) the presser foot. If the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may bend or break.

7 Securely tighten the positioning screw with a screwdriver.

8 Topstitch around the zipper.

! CAUTION

- When sewing, be sure that the needle does not touch the zipper, otherwise the needle may bend or break.

9 Remove the basting stitching.

---

**Inserting a piping**

1 Place the piping between two fabric pieces turned inside out, as shown below.

![](image1.png)

1 Fabric  
2 Piping  
3 Fabric

2 Refer to the steps of attaching the adjustable zipper/piping foot on the previous page.

3 Sew along the piping.

![](image2.png)

4 After sewing, turn fabric pieces.

![](image3.png)
Sewing Stretch Fabrics and Elastic Tape

Stretch fabrics can be sewn and elastic tape can be attached.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stretch stitch</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Stretch fabrics</td>
<td>1.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>1.0–3.0 (1/16–1/8)</td>
<td>J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
<td>1.0–4.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-point zigzag stitch</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Attaching elastic</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-point zigzag stitch</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elastic-attaching stitch</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>Attaching elastic to stretch</td>
<td>4.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fabrics</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0 (1/16)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observe the corresponding precautions when performing each of the following stitching operations.

### Stretch stitching

1. **Attach zigzag foot “J”**.

   ![Attach zigzag foot “J”](image)

   - For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

2. **Select stitch 5/2**.

   ![Select stitch 5/2](image)

   - For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

3. **Sew the fabric without stretching it**.

   ![Sew the fabric without stretching it](image)

### Elastic attaching

When elastic tape is attached to the cuff or waist of a piece of clothing, the finished dimensions will be that of the stretched elastic tape. Therefore, it is necessary that a suitable length of the elastic tape be used.

1. **Pin the elastic tape to the wrong side of the fabric**.

   Pin the elastic tape to the fabric at a few points to make sure that the tape is uniformly positioned on the fabric.

   ![Pin the elastic tape](image)

   - Elastic tape
   - Pin

2. **Attach zigzag foot “J”**.

   ![Attach zigzag foot “J”](image)

   - For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).
3 Select a stitch.

- Example: 2-point zigzag stitch

- Example: Elastic-attaching stitch

- For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

4 Sew the elastic tape to the fabric while stretching the tape so that it is the same length as the fabric.

While pulling the fabric behind the presser foot with your left hand, pull the fabric at the pin nearest the front of the presser foot with your right hand.

CAUTION

- When sewing, be sure that the needle does not touch any pins, otherwise the needle may bend or break.
The stitches that can be used for sewing appliqués, patchwork and quilts are described below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zigzag stitch</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Attaching appliqués (center baseline/reverse stitching)</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>1.4 (1/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Appliqué quilting, free-motion quilting, satin stitching</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>1.4 (1/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appliqué stitch</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>Attaching appliqués</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>2.5–7.0 (3/32–1/4)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Attaching appliqués and binding</td>
<td>1.5 (1/16)</td>
<td>0.5–3.5 (1/32–1/8)</td>
<td>1.8 (1/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piecing straight stitch</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Piecing straight stitching (with a seam allowance of 6.5 mm (1/4 inch) from the right edge of the presser foot)</td>
<td>5.5 (7/32)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Piecing straight stitching (with a seam allowance of 6.5 mm (1/4 inch) from the left edge of the presser foot)</td>
<td>1.5 (1/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joining stitch</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>Patchwork stitching</td>
<td>4.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>1.2 (1/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>2.5–7.0 (3/32–1/4)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>1.2 (1/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mock hand quilting stitch</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>Straight stitch quilting that looks hand quilting</td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quilting stippling</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Stippling</td>
<td>7.0 (1/4)</td>
<td>1.0–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>1.6 (1/16)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Memo**

- Patterns showing a “Q” on the LCD are for quilting and those showing a “P” are for piecing.
Appliqué stitching

For best results, use the included open toe foot.

1. Cut out the appliqué, leaving a seam allowance of between 3 and 5 mm (1/8 and 3/16 inch).

![Seam allowance](image)

2. Place a pattern made of thick paper or stabilizer on the back of the appliqué, and then fold over the seam allowance using an iron.

![Basting stitching](image)

3. Turn the fabric over, and then baste or fuse it onto the fabric that it will be attached to.

![Basting stitching](image)

4. Attach the open toe foot.

- For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

5. Select a stitch.

![Selected stitches](image)

- For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

6. Turn the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise), and then begin sewing around the edge of the appliqué, making sure that the needle drops just outside of the appliqué.

When sewing around corners, stop the machine with the needle in the fabric just outside of the appliqué, raise the presser foot lever, and then turn the fabric as needed to change the sewing direction.
**Patchwork (crazy quilt) stitching**

1. Fold the edge of the top piece of fabric and place it over the lower piece.

2. Sew the two pieces of fabric together so the pattern spans over both pieces.

**Piecing**

Sewing together two pieces of fabric is called “piecing”. The fabric pieces should be cut with a 7 mm (1/4 inch) seam allowance. Sew a piecing straight stitch 7 mm (1/4 inch) from either the right side or the left side of the presser foot.

1. Baste or pin along the seam allowance of the fabric that you wish to piece together.

2. Attach zigzag foot “J”.

   - For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

3. Select stitch 21 or 22.

   - For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).
   - The piecing straight stitch shows a “P” on the LCD.

4. Sew with the side of the presser foot aligned with the edge of the fabric.

   - For a seam allowance on the right side
     Align the right side of the presser foot with the edge of the fabric, and sew using stitch 21.

   - 7 mm (1/4 inch)
For a seam allowance on the left side
Align the left side of the presser foot with the edge of the fabric, and sew using stitch 23.

To change the width of the seam allowance (needle position), adjust the stitch width. For details, refer to “Adjusting the stitch width” (page 58).

Using the optional 1/4 inch quilting foot
If the 1/4 inch quilting foot is used, seams can be sewn with a seam allowance of 6.4 mm (1/4 inch).

Baste or pin along the seam allowance of the fabric that you wish to piece together.

Attach the 1/4 inch quilting foot.

For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

Select stitch 3.

Align the mark at the upper edge of the 1/4 inch quilting foot with the upper edge of the fabric.
Align the right edge of the fabric with the right edge of the narrow part of the 1/4 inch quilting foot.

When sewing with a seam allowance, align the left edge of the narrow part of the 1/4 inch quilting foot with the fabric edge.

When the end of the stitching is reached, stop the sewing machine.
Sew until the mark at the lower edge of the 1/4 inch quilting foot aligns with the lower edge of the fabric.


**Quilting**

Sandwiching batting between the top and bottom layers of fabric is called “quilting”. Quilts can easily be sewn using the optional walking foot and the optional quilting guide.

---

**Note**

- Thread the needle manually when using the walking foot, or only attach the walking foot after threading the needle using the needle threader.
- When sewing with the walking foot, sew at a speed between slow and medium.
- When quilting, use a 90/14 home sewing machine needle.
- The walking foot can only be used with straight or zigzag stitch patterns. Reverse stitches cannot be sewn with the walking foot. Only select straight or zigzag stitch patterns with reinforcement stitches. For details, refer to “Stitch Setting Chart” (page 70).

---

1. **Baste the fabric to be quilted.**
2. **Remove the presser foot and the presser foot holder.**
   - For details, refer to “Removing and attaching the presser foot holder” (page 46).
3. **Hook the connecting fork of the walking foot onto the needle clamp screw.**
   - For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).
4. Lower the presser foot lever, insert the presser foot holder screw, and then tighten the screw with the screwdriver.

---

**CAUTION**

- Be sure to securely tighten the screws with the screwdriver, otherwise the needle may touch the presser foot, causing it to bend or break.
- Before starting to sew, slowly turn the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) and check that the needle does not touch the presser foot. If the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may bend or break.

---

5. **Select a stitch.**
   - For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).
6. **Place one hand on each side of the presser foot, and hold fabric taut while sewing.**
Using the optional quilting guide
Use the quilting guide to sew parallel stitches that are equally spaced.

1. Insert the stem of the quilting guide into the hole at the rear of the walking foot or presser foot holder.
   - Walking foot
   - Presser foot holder

2. Adjust the stem of the quilting guide so that the guide aligns with the seam that has already been sewn.

Note
- The optional quilting guide is available through brother dealer.

Free-motion quilting

With free-motion quilting, lower the feed dogs (using the drop feed lever) so that the fabric can be moved freely in any direction.
When free-motion quilting, use the following instructions with the optional quilting foot.

Note
- Thread the needle manually when using the quilting foot, or only attach the quilting foot after threading the needle using the needle threader.

1. Remove the presser foot and the presser foot holder.
   - Refer to “Removing and attaching the presser foot holder” (page 46).

2. Secure the quilting foot with the presser foot holder screw.
The pin on the quilting foot should be positioned over the needle clamp screw.

3. Hold the quilting foot in place with your right hand, and then tighten the presser foot holder screw using the screwdriver in your left hand.

Note
- The optional quilting guide is available through brother dealer.
CAUTION

- Be sure to securely tighten the screws with the screwdriver, otherwise the needle may touch the presser foot, causing it to bend or break.

Slide the drop feed lever, located at the rear of the machine on the base, to (to the left as seen from the rear of the machine).

1. Feed dog position switch (as seen from the rear of the machine)
   - The feed dogs are lowered.

Turn on the sewing machine, and then select a stitch.
- For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

Use both hands to hold the fabric taut, and then move the fabric to follow the pattern. Reinforcement stitches are sewn at the beginning and end of sewing.

After sewing is finished, slide the drop feed lever to (to the right as seen from the rear of the machine) and turn the handwheel to raise the feed dogs.
- Normally, the drop feed lever is positioned at the right.

Satin stitching using the sewing speed controller

A decorative stitch can be sewn by changing the stitch width of a satin stitch. If the sewing machine is set so that the stitch width can be adjusted using the sewing speed controller, the stitch width can quickly and easily be adjusted. In this case, the sewing speed is adjusted with the foot controller.

1. Connect the foot controller.
   - For details, refer to “Starting to sew” (page 53).

2. Attach zigzag foot “J”.
   - For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

3. Turn on the sewing machine, and then press (Settings key) on the operation panel.
   - The settings screen appears.

4. Press ON for stitch width control setting.
   - The machine is now set so that the stitch width can be controlled with the sewing speed controller. If the stitch width control setting is set to “ON”, for stitch width will change to sewing speed controller icon .

Appliqué, Patchwork and Quilt Stitching 111
Press (Back key).

The initial screen appears again.

Select stitch 24.

For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

While sewing, slide the sewing speed controller to adjust the stitch width.
Slide the controller to the left to make the width narrower. Slide the controller to the right to make the width wider.

Adjust the sewing speed with the foot controller.

Memo

- Although the stitching result differs depending on the type of fabric being sewn and the thickness of the thread being used, for best results, adjust the stitch length to between 0.3 and 0.5 mm (1/64 and 1/32 inch).

When you are finished sewing, set the stitch width control setting back to OFF.

Memo

- When the foot controller is plugged in, (“Start/Stop” button) cannot be used to start sewing.
Reinforcement Stitching

Reinforce points that will be subject to strain, such as sleeve holes, inseams and pocket corners.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Triple stretch stitch</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Reinforcing the seams of sleeves and inseams</td>
<td>0.0 (0)</td>
<td>2.5 (3/32)</td>
<td>J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bar tack stitch</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Reinforcing the ends of openings, such as the corners of pockets</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
<td>0.4 (1/64)</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darning stitch</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>Darning medium weight fabrics</td>
<td>7.0 (1/4)</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>59</td>
<td>Darning thick fabrics</td>
<td>7.0 (1/4)</td>
<td>2.0 (1/16)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Triple stretch stitching**

Use triple stretch stitching to reinforce sleeve holes and inseams.

1. Attach zigzag foot “J”.

   • For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

2. Select stitch 4.

   • For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

3. Start sewing.

   • For details, refer to “Starting to sew” (page 53).

**Bar tack stitching**

Bar tacks are used to reinforce points subject to strain, such as pocket corners and openings. As an example, the procedure for sewing bar tacks at pocket corners is described below.

1. Determine the desired length of the bar tack.

   Set the button guide plate on buttonhole foot “A” to the desired length. (The distance between the markings on the presser foot scale is 5 mm (3/16 inch).)

   • A bar tack with a maximum length of about 28 mm (1–1/8 inches) can be sewn.
2 Attach buttonhole foot “A”.
   - For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

3 Select stitch 60 [ ].
   - For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

4 Position the fabric so that the opening of the pocket faces toward you, and then lower the presser foot lever so that the needle drops 2 mm (1/16 inch) in front of the pocket opening.

5 Pull down the buttonhole lever as far as possible.

6 Gently hold the end of the upper thread in your left hand, and then start sewing.

7 Raise the presser foot lever, remove the fabric, and then cut the threads.

8 Raise the buttonhole lever to its original position.

Memo
   - If the fabric does not feed, for example, because it is too thick, increase the stitch length. For details, refer to “Adjusting the stitch length” (page 59).
**Darning**

Fabric that has been torn can be darned. Darning is sewn as shown below.

1. **Determine the desired length of the darning.**
   Set the button guide plate on buttonhole foot “A” to the desired length. (The distance between the markings on the presser foot scale is 5 mm (3/16 inch).)

2. **Attach buttonhole foot “A”.**
   - For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

3. **Select stitch 58 or 59.**
   - For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

4. **Position the fabric so that the needle is 2 mm (1/16 inch) in front of the area to be darned, and then lower the presser foot lever.”**
Pass the upper thread down through the hole in the presser foot.

- When lowering the presser foot, do not push in the front of the presser foot, otherwise the darning will not be sewn with the correct size.

Do not reduce the gap.

Pull down the buttonhole lever as far as possible.

The buttonhole lever is positioned behind the bracket on the buttonhole foot.

Gently hold the end of the upper thread in your left hand, and then start sewing.

Once sewing is completed, the machine automatically sews reinforcement stitches, then stops.

Raise the presser foot lever, remove the fabric, and then cut the threads.

Raise the buttonhole lever to its original position.

Memo

- If the fabric does not feed, for example, because it is too thick, increase the stitch length. For details, refer to “Adjusting the stitch length” (page 59).
Eyelet Stitching

Eyelets, such as those on belts, can be sewn. Three sizes of eyelets are possible: 7 mm, 6 mm and 5 mm (1/4, 15/64 and 3/16 inch).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eyelet stitch</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>Sewing eyelets, for example, on belts</td>
<td>Auto: 7.0 (1/4) Manual: 7.0, 6.0 or 5.0 (1/4, 15/64 or 3/16)</td>
<td>Auto: 7.0 (1/4) Manual: 7.0, 6.0 or 5.0 (1/4, 15/64 or 3/16)</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Attach monogramming foot “N”.
2. Select stitch 62.
3. Adjust either the stitch width or the stitch length to select the desired eyelet size.
4. Lower the needle into the fabric at the beginning of the stitching, and then lower the presser foot lever.
5. Start sewing.
   - Once sewing is completed, the machine automatically sews reinforcement stitches, then stops.
6. Use the eyelet punch to cut a hole in the center of the eyelet.

- When using the eyelet punch, place thick paper or some other protective sheet under the fabric before punching the hole in the fabric.

Memo
- If light weight thread is used, the stitching may be sparse. If this occurs, sew the eyelet twice before removing the fabric, one on top of the other.
Horizontal Stitching

Horizontal stitching is used to attach appliqués to fabric that cannot be moved around, such as cylindrical pieces. Straight stitches and zigzag stitches that sew to either the left or right are available.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal straight stitch</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>Attaching appliqués to sleeves (straight stitch sewn to the left)</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>69</td>
<td>Attaching appliqués to sleeves (straight stitch sewn to the right)</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal zigzag stitch</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>Attaching appliqués to sleeves (zigzag stitch sewn to the left)</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>71</td>
<td>Attaching appliqués to sleeves (zigzag stitch sewn to the right)</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The illustration below shows the sewing order for the following explanation.

1. Remove the flat bed attachment.
   • For details, refer to “Free-arm sewing” (page 47).

2. Attach monogramming foot “N”.
   • For details, refer to “Replacing the Presser Foot” (page 44).

   • For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

4. Lower the needle into the fabric at the beginning of the stitching, and then start sewing.
   Lower the needle at the upper-right corner.

   ► The fabric is fed toward the back of the machine, as usual.

5. After you have sewn to the corner, stop the sewing machine, and then select stitch 68.


   ► The fabric is fed to the right.

7. After you have sewn to the corner, stop the sewing machine, and then select stitch 1/71.
8 Press (“Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button). Hold (“Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button) pressed until the stitching reaches the upper-left corner.

- The fabric is fed forward.

9 After you have sewn to the corner, stop the sewing machine, and then select stitch 69.

10 Start sewing.

- The fabric is fed to the left.

11 After you have sewn to the corner, stop the sewing machine, and then select stitch 1 again.

12 After sewing 3 to 5 stitches at the beginning of the stitching, stop the sewing machine.

Memo

- The feeding direction of the fabric differs depending on the stitch that is selected. Be sure to guide the fabric while it is sewn.
## Decorative Stitching

The utility stitches contain the following decorative stitches.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fagoting stitch</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Sewing two pieces of fabric together across an open seam</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>Auto-Manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>33</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>2.5–7.0 (3/25–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joining stitch</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>29</td>
<td>Decorative bridging stitches</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>2.5–7.0 (3/32–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shell tuck stitch</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Shell tuck stitching on collars and curves</td>
<td>4.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smocking stitch</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>Smocking fabrics to add texture and elasticity</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>2.5–7.0 (3/32–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>33</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scallop stitch</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>Satin scallop stitching</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>2.5–7.0 (3/32–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>39</td>
<td>Lace sewing, decorative hemming, heirloom stitching, etc.</td>
<td>3.5 (1/8)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
<td>6.0 (15/64)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemstitching</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>Decorative hemming and heirloom stitching, etc. on thin, medium weight and plain weave fabrics</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>43</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>44</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45</td>
<td>Decorative hemming, ribbon threading, heirloom stitching, etc.</td>
<td>5.0 (3/16)</td>
<td>1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

120
Decorative Stitching

Fagoting

Stitching across an open seam is called “fagoting”. It is used on blouses and children's clothing. This stitch is more decorative when thicker thread is used.

1. Use an iron to fold the two pieces of fabric along their seams.

2. Baste the two pieces of fabric, separated by about 4 mm (3/16 inch), onto thin paper or a sheet of water-soluble stabilizer. If you draw a line down the middle of the thin paper or water-soluble stabilizer, sewing is easier.

3. Attach zigzag foot “J”.

4. Select stitch 32 or 33.

5. Set the stitch width to 7.0 mm (1/4 inch).

6. Sew with the center of the presser foot aligned along the center of the two pieces of fabric.

7. After sewing is finished, remove the paper.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stitch Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Stitch Width [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Stitch Length [mm (inch)]</th>
<th>Presser Foot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hemstitching</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>Heirloom stitching, etc.</td>
<td>Auto: 6.0 (15/64) Manual: 1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>Auto: 1.6 (1/16) Manual: 1.0–4.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
<td>Auto: 5.0 (3/16) Manual: 1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>Auto: 1.6 (1/16) Manual: 1.0–4.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ladder stitch</td>
<td>35</td>
<td></td>
<td>Auto: 4.0 (3/16) Manual: 0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>Auto: 3.0 (1/8) Manual: 2.0–4.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rick-rack stitch</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>Decorative stitching</td>
<td>Auto: 4.0 (3/16) Manual: 0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>Auto: 2.5 (3/32) Manual: 1.0–4.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decorative stitch</td>
<td>37</td>
<td></td>
<td>Auto: 5.5 (7/32) Manual: 0.0–7.0 (0–1/4)</td>
<td>Auto: 1.6 (1/16) Manual: 1.0–4.0 (1/16–3/16)</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serpentine stitch</td>
<td>38</td>
<td></td>
<td>Auto: 5.0 (3/16) Manual: 1.5–7.0 (1/16–1/4)</td>
<td>Auto: 1.0 (1/16) Manual: 0.2–4.0 (1/64–3/16)</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Scallop stitching

The wave-shaped repeating pattern that looks like shells is called “scalloping”. It is used on the collars of blouses and to decorate the edges of projects.

1 Attach monogramming foot “N”.

- For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

2 Select stitch 27.

- For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

3 Stitch along the edge of the fabric, making sure not to sew directly on the edge of the fabric.

- For better results, apply spray starch the fabric and press with a hot iron before it is sewn.

4 Trim along the stitches.

- Be careful not to cut the stitches.

Smocking

The decorative stitch created by stitching or embroidering over gathers is called “smocking”. It is used to decorate the front of blouses or cuffs. The smocking stitch adds texture and elasticity to fabric.

1 Attach zigzag foot “J”.

- For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

2 Select the straight stitch, and then adjust the stitch length to 4.0 mm (3/16 inch) and loosen the thread tension.

- For details, refer to “Adjusting the stitch length” (page 59) and “Adjusting the thread tension” (page 59).

- Pull up the bobbin thread. For details, refer to “Pulling up the bobbin thread” (page 39).

3 Sew parallel stitching at intervals of 1 cm (3/8 inch).

- Do not use reverse/reinforcement stitching or thread cutting.

- At the end of the stitching, the thread is pulled out about 5 cm (2 inches).

4 Pull the bobbin threads to create gathers.

Smooth the gathers by ironing them.
Select stitch 31, 32 or 33.

For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

Stitch between the straight stitches.

Pull out the threads for the straight stitches.

Shell tuck stitching

The gathers that look like shells are called “shell tucks”. They are used to decorate trims, the front of blouses or cuffs made of thin fabrics.

1. Fold the fabric along the bias.

2. Attach zigzag foot “J”.

For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

3. Select stitch 20, and then increase the thread tension.

For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51) and “Adjusting the thread tension” (page 59).
4 Sew while making sure that the needle drops slightly off the edge of the fabric.

5 Unfold the fabric, and then iron the tucks down to one side.

Joining

Decorative bridging stitches can be sewn over the seam allowance of joined fabrics. This is used when making a crazy quilt.

1 Attach zigzag foot “J”.

   - For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

2 Sew together the right sides of the two pieces of fabric, and then open up the seam allowances.

3 Select stitch 28, 29 or 30.

   - For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

4 Turn the fabric over so that the right side faces up, and then sew over the seam with the center of the presser foot aligned with the seam.
Heirloom stitching

When sewing with the wing needle, the needle holes are enlarged, creating a lace-like decorative stitch. This is used to decorate hems and tablecloths on thin or medium weight fabrics in addition to plain weave fabrics.

**Note**
- If the thread becomes tangled, use stabilizer material.

1. **Install the wing needle.**
   - Use a 130/705H 100/16 wing needle.
   - For details on installing a needle, refer to “Replacing the needle” (page 42).
   - The needle threader cannot be used with the wing needle, otherwise the sewing machine may be damaged. Manually pass the thread through the eye of the needle from the front to the back. For details, refer to “Threading the needle manually (without using the needle threader)” (page 35).

2. **Attach monogramming foot “N”.**
   - For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

3. **Select a stitch.**
   - The stitches that can be used are 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, or 47.
   - For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).
   - When sewing with the wing needle, select a stitch width of 6.0 mm (15/64 inch) or less.

4. **Start sewing.**

   **CAUTION**
   - When sewing with the wing needle, select a stitch width of 6.0 mm (15/64 inch) or less, otherwise the needle may bend or break.
   - After adjusting the stitch width, slowly turn the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) and check that the needle does not touch the presser foot. If the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may bend or break.
Partially removing threads is called “drawnwork”. This gives a beautiful result with fabrics that have a loose weave. Two ways to create drawnwork are described below.

**Drawnwork (Example 1)**

1. **Pull out several threads from the fabric.**

2. **Attach monogramming foot “N”.**

   - For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

3. **Select stitch 39.**

   - For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

4. **With the right side of the fabric facing up, sew along the right edge of the frayed section.**

5. **Press on the LCD.**

   - The pattern displayed at the top of the screen is mirrored.

6. **Sew along the other edge of the frayed section so that it looks like the previous stitching.**

7. **Press , and set the horizontal mirror image key back to OFF.**
- **Drawnwork (Example 2)**

1. Pull out several threads from two sections of the fabric, separated by an unfrayed section of about 4 mm (3/16 inch).

   ![4 mm (3/16 inch)]

2. Attach monogramming foot “N”.

   - For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

3. Select stitch 42.

   - For details, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 51).

4. Sew along the center of the unfrayed section.
Sewing the Various Built-in Decorative Patterns

You can sew decorative stitches, satin stitches, cross stitches, decorative satin stitches, combined utility stitches and 3 types of character stitches. All are sewn with monogramming foot “N”.

Sewing beautiful patterns

In order to sew the patterns correctly, the following must be considered.

Fabric

Before sewing stretch or thin fabrics or fabrics with a coarse weave, affix stabilizer material to the wrong side of the fabric or place a thin sheet of paper, such as tracing paper, under the fabric. Since material puckering or bunched stitches may occur when satin stitches are sewn, be sure to affix stabilizer material to the fabric.

Needles and threads

When sewing thin, medium weight or stretch fabrics, use the ball point needle. When sewing thick fabrics, use a 90/14 home sewing machine needle. In addition, #50 to #60 thread should be used.

Trial sewing

Depending on the type and thickness of the fabric being sewn and whether or not stabilizer material is used, the desired result may not be achieved. Be sure to sew a trial piece of fabric before sewing your project. In addition, while sewing, be sure to guide the fabric with your hands in order to prevent the fabric from slipping.

Sewing patterns

1. Attach monogramming foot “N”.

   • For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

2. Select a stitch.

   • For details, refer to steps 1 through 5 of “Selecting stitching” (page 77).

3. Start sewing.

   • The stitching is sewn in the direction indicated by the arrow.

4. Sew reinforcement stitches.

   When sewing with a character stitch, reinforcement stitches are automatically sewn after each character.

   • When sewing a pattern with a stitch other than a character stitch, it is useful to first set the automatic reverse/reinforcement stitching setting. For details, refer to “Automatically sewing reverse/reinforcement stitches” (page 61).

5. When you are finished sewing, use scissors to trim off any excess threads at the beginning of the stitching and between the patterns.

Memo

For details on adjusting the stitch width and length, refer to “Adjusting the stitch width” (page 58) and “Adjusting the stitch length” (page 59).
Changing the pattern size

The size of character stitches in the Gothic font and outline style, decorative stitches, and decorative satin stitches can be switched between large and small. However, the size of other patterns cannot be changed.

1. Select a stitch.
   - For details on selecting a stitch, refer to “Selecting stitching” (page 77).

2. Press \[ \text{LS} \] until the desired size is selected.

3. Repeat steps 1 and 2.

Memo

- The large pattern size is the default. If the small pattern size is selected, small patterns can be combined and connected.
- If multiple patterns have been combined, the size of each selected pattern can be specified.

Changing the stitch density

If a decorative satin stitch has been selected, the stitch density can be changed.

1. Press [ ] (Utility stitch key) on the operation panel, and select [ ] (Decorative satin stitch).

2. Select a decorative satin stitch pattern.

3. Press [ ] until the desired stitch density is selected.
   - Select [ ] for sparse stitching, or select [ ] for compact stitching.

CAUTION

- If the stitching density is too compacted, depending on the needle, the stitches may be bunched together, causing the needle to break.
Changing the length for satin stitches

The length for one satin stitch can be changed in five gradations.

1. Press \( \text{Utility stitch key} \) on the operation panel, and select \( \text{Satin stitch} \).

2. Select a satin stitch pattern.

3. Press \( \text{13} \).

   ![Image]

   It turns to \( \text{14} \) and the pattern is longer.

   ![Image]

   Each time you press it the number changes. You can select from \( \text{1} \) - \( \text{5} \).
Sewing the Various Built-in Decorative Patterns

**Shifting patterns**

Satin stitches can be shifted to the left or right by half the width of the pattern, allowing you to create a step-shaped pattern. This is called a “step pattern”. Select \[ \text{ } \] once to move the stitch pattern to the left by half the width of the stitch pattern. Select \[ \text{ } \] once to move the stitch pattern to the right by half the width of the stitch pattern. As an example, the procedure for creating the following pattern is described below.

1. Press \[ \text{Utility stitch key} \] on the operation panel, and select \[ \text{Satin stitch} \].
2. Select a satin stitch pattern.
3. Press \[ \text{ } \] (Satin stitch).

   The next pattern selected is moved half a width to the right.
4. Select the same pattern.
Press .

The next pattern selected is moved half a width to the left.

Specify that the patterns will be sewn repeatedly.

- For details, refer to “Repeating patterns” (page 133).

Examples of step patterns

Combining patterns

You can sew with combinations of stitches from character stitches, decorative stitches, satin stitches, combined utility stitches, decorative satin stitches and cross stitches.

1. Touch (Utility stitch key) on the operation panel, and select the stitch type.

2. Select the first pattern.

- The first pattern is selected and appears in on the screen.

- When the sewing is started, the selected pattern is sewn repeatedly until the sewing machine is stopped.
Select the next pattern.

- The combined pattern appears on the screen.

3

- To remove a selected pattern, press DELETE on the screen. The pattern that was selected last is removed.
- To combine patterns from different types, press BACK (Back key), and after selecting the type, select the next pattern.

After all of the desired patterns are selected, start sewing.

4

- The order that the patterns appear on the screen is the order that they will be sewn.

Memo

- Up to 70 patterns can be combined.
- If multiple patterns have been combined, the sewing machine stops once all the selected patterns displayed in the LCD have been sewn. To repeatedly sew the combined pattern, refer to “Repeating patterns”.
- The combined pattern can be saved for later use. For details, refer to “Saving patterns” (page 135).

Repeating patterns

When multiple stitches are combined, the sewing machine stops when the pattern displayed on the screen has been completed. Use the following operations to sew a combined pattern repeatedly.

After the patterns have been combined, press .

If pressed again, it turns to (single sewing).

1

- turns to and you can now sew the specified pattern repeatedly.

Note

- If repeated sewing is set, the pattern is repeatedly sewn until the sewing machine is stopped.
- If the sewing machine is turned off, the repeated/single sewing setting returns to its default setting.
- Mirroring a pattern image

After a single pattern has been selected, press \( \text{ Mirroring } \) to mirror the pattern image horizontally.

- Checking the pattern

When the specified pattern is not displayed on the screen, check the pattern using the following steps.

1. Press \( \text{CHECK} \).

   ▶ The screen for checking the pattern is displayed.

2. Press \( \land \) and confirm the pattern.

3. Press \( \text{(Back key)} \).

   ▶ The initial screen appears again.

Memo

- The combined pattern can be saved for later use. For details, refer to “Saving patterns” (page 135).
Saving patterns

Combined patterns can be saved for later use. Since saved patterns are not lost after the sewing machine is turned off, they can be retrieved at any time. Up to 10 patterns can be saved.

■ Saving a pattern

1. Create the combined pattern that you wish to save.
   - For details, refer to “Combining patterns” (page 132).

2. Press \( \begin{array}{c} \text{MEMORY} \\ \end{array} \) (Memory key) on the operation panel.

   ▶ “Saving...” appears while the pattern is being saved. After the pattern is saved, the initial screen appears again.

   ▶ Do not turn off the sewing machine while the pattern is being saved, otherwise the pattern data may be lost.

■ Retrieving a pattern

1. Press \( \begin{array}{c} \text{CHECK} \\ \end{array} \).

   Retrieve the saved pattern.

   ▶ The screen for selecting a pocket appears.

2. Select the pocket where the combined pattern you wish to retrieve is stored.

   ▶ The selected pocket is shown in reverse highlighting, and the saved pattern is displayed.

3. Check the contents, and then press \( \begin{array}{c} \text{CHECK} \\ \end{array} \).

   Press \( \begin{array}{c} \text{CHECK} \\ \end{array} \) to check a pattern that is not displayed completely.

   ▶ The saved pattern is retrieved.

   ▶ The pattern selection screen appears, and you can sew the pattern you have retrieved.
Deleting a saved pattern
Saved pattern in the pockets can be deleted.

1 Press .

2 Select the pocket where the pattern you wish to delete is stored.
 indicates pockets where patterns are already saved.

   The selected pocket is shown in reverse highlighting, and the saved pattern is displayed.

3 Check the contents, then press DELETE.

   The confirmation message is displayed.

4 Press OK.

   The saved pattern and the pocket are deleted.

Realigning the pattern

The pattern may not be sewn correctly, depending on the type of fabric being sewn or the sewing speed. If this occurs, adjust the pattern while sewing on a piece of scrap fabric that is the same as that used for your project.

1 Attach monogramming foot “N”.

   For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

2 Press (Utility stitch key) on the operation panel, and select (Decorative stitch).

   The screen containing the various decorative stitches appears.

3 Select .

   The pattern alignment stitch is selected.
4 Start sewing.

- The pattern for making the adjustment is sewn.
- The sewing machine stops after it has finished sewing the pattern.

5 Check the sewn pattern.

If the part of the pattern indicated in the illustration is sewn uniformly, the pattern is correctly aligned.

If the pattern appears as shown below, the stitching is misaligned in the vertical direction.

6 Press (Settings key) on the operation panel.

- The settings screen appears.

7 Press .

To adjust the vertical position, press for vertical pattern adjustment.
To adjust the horizontal position, press for horizontal pattern adjustment.

- Make the necessary adjustments according to how the pattern is sewn.

- Vertical pattern adjustment

Press to increase the vertical space in the design.

Press to decrease the vertical space in the design.
■ Horizontal pattern adjustment

- Press + to increase the horizontal space in the design.

- Press - to decrease the horizontal space in the design.

- Press (Back key).

- It returns to the screen for adjusting the pattern.

- Select once again, start the sewing machine and check the stitching. Continue adjusting the pattern until it is sewn correctly.
Designing a Pattern (My Custom Stitch)

With the My Custom Stitch function, you can sew stitch patterns that you design yourself.

**Drawing a sketch of the pattern**

Prepare a grid sheet set.

1. **Draw a sketch of the pattern on the grid sheet set.**

   Draw the pattern as one continuous line and with the start point and the end point of the design at the same height.

   ![Sketch of a pattern on a grid sheet set]

2. **If the pattern will be repeated, determine the space between the repeating patterns.**

   ![Sketches of repeated patterns]

3. **Mark the points in the pattern that are positioned at intersections in the grid, and then link those points with a continuous straight line.**

   ![Graph showing marked points and continuous lines]

4. **Determine the sewing order.**

   For a more attractive stitch, close the pattern by intersecting the line.

   ![Graph with arrows showing sewing order]

---

*Designing a Pattern (My Custom Stitch) 139*
Entering the pattern data

Follow the pattern drawn on the grid sheet and program the pattern into the sewing machine.

1. Attach monogramming foot “N”.

- For details, refer to “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).

2. Press \( \text{Utility stitch key} \) on the operation panel, and select \( \text{Utility stitch} \).

- The screen for entering a pattern appears.

3. Check the grid sheet set, and specify the coordinates of the first point.

   Specify the coordinates using \( \text{coordinate selection} \), and press \( \text{SET} \).

4. Specify whether single stitching or triple stitching will be sewn between the points.

   \( \text{Single stitching} \) is single stitching, and \( \text{Triple stitching} \) gives triple stitching.

5. Specify the coordinates of the second point, and then press \( \text{SET} \).

6. Repeat steps 4 through 5 to specify each point.

   - If you make a mistake entering a point, press \( \text{DELETE} \), and the previous point is erased.

   - To correct the content entered, press \( \text{EDIT} \). You can insert, delete and move points.

7. After all points have been entered, press \( \text{OK} \).

- The sewing screen appears.
Specify the various stitching settings, such as reverse/reinforcement stitching, in the same way as with other stitches.

- To revise the pattern, press [EDIT].

**Memo**

- The pattern you entered can be saved for later use. For details, refer to “Saving patterns” (page 135).
Examples of designs
Enter each of the points indicated in the table to sew the sample stitch.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Point</th>
<th>←</th>
<th>↑</th>
<th>Point</th>
<th>←</th>
<th>↑</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Point</th>
<th>←</th>
<th>↑</th>
<th>Point</th>
<th>←</th>
<th>↑</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The steps for embroidering are described in this chapter.

- **Successful Embroidering**
  - What to prepare
  - Embroidery step by step
- ** Attaching the Embroidery Foot**
  - Attaching the embroidery foot
  - Removing the embroidery foot
- ** Attaching the Embroidery Unit**
  - Embroidery unit precautions
  - Attaching the embroidery unit
  - Removing the embroidery unit
- ** Preparing the Fabric**
  - Attaching an optional stabilizer material to the fabric
  - Setting the fabric in the embroidery frame
- ** Attaching the Embroidery Frame**
  - Attaching the embroidery frame
  - Removing the embroidery frame
- ** Selecting Embroidery Patterns**
  - Copyright information
  - Embroidery pattern types
  - LCD (liquid crystal display) operation
  - Selecting an embroidery pattern
  - Selecting characters
  - Selecting a frame pattern
  - Using an embroidery card (sold separately)
- ** Embroidering**
  - Sewing attractive finishes
  - Embroidering a pattern
  - Appliquéing
- ** Editing Patterns**
  - Adjusting the layout
  - Adjusting the thread tension
  - Adjusting the alternate bobbin case (with no color on the screw)
  - Resewing
  - Thread runs out partway through a design
  - Stopping while embroidering
- ** Using the Memory Function**
  - Embroidery data precautions
  - Saving patterns
  - Transferring embroidery patterns from the computer to machine
Successful Embroidering

This section describes the preparations and basic procedures for embroidering.

What to prepare

The following is necessary for embroidering.

- **Fabric**
  Prepare the fabric for embroidery. Prepare a piece of fabric a little larger than the embroidery frame that matches the size of the pattern you want to sew.

  **Note**
  - Always use stabilizer when sewing embroidery projects, especially when embroidering on lightweight or stretch fabrics. Not using a stabilizer may result in poor quality embroidery designs.
  - When embroidering on large pieces of fabric, arrange the fabric so that it does not hang off the table where the sewing machine is placed. If embroidery is done with the fabric hanging off, the embroidery unit movement may be impaired, this could cause the pattern to sew incorrectly.

- **Stabilizer material**
  Attach a stabilizer material for embroidery to the fabric to prevent poor quality embroidery designs.

  We recommend stabilizer material for embroidery. Use a water soluble sheet on thin materials like organdy and fabrics with a nap like towels. For details, refer to “Optional accessories” (page 12).

- **Embroidery thread**
  For the upper thread, use the embroidery thread or country thread.

  For the bobbin thread, use the embroidery bobbin thread. For details, refer to “Optional accessories” (page 12).

  **Note**
  - For good quality embroidery designs be sure to use embroidery thread designed for embroidery machines.
  - Before starting to sew, be sure there is enough bobbin thread. If you continue embroidering when the bobbin thread is low, the thread may become tangled.

- **CAUTION**
  - Do not embroider fabrics that are too thick. To check the fabric thickness, attach the embroidery frame to the embroidery unit, and use ("Needle Position" button) to raise the needle. If there is space between the presser foot and the fabric, the fabric can be embroidered. If there is no space, do not embroider the fabric. Otherwise, the needle may break, resulting in injury.
  - Be careful when sewing overlapping patterns. The needle may not easily pierce the fabric, causing the needle to break.
■ Needle
Use a 75/11 home sewing machine needle. When embroidering on thick fabrics such as denim, use a 90/14 home sewing machine needle.

Memo
- A 75/11 needle is already installed when the sewing machine is purchased.
- When replacing the needle, refer to “Replacing the needle” (page 42).

CAUTION
- Since ball point needles (gold colored) are needles for fabrics where stitches are easily skipped, such as pattern stitching and stretch fabrics, be absolutely sure not to use them for embroidery. The needle may break or bend.

■ Other
Embroidery frames “small” and “medium” are optional. For details, refer to “Optional accessories” (page 12).
### Embroidery step by step

The basic steps for embroidery are as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Task</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1</strong></td>
<td><strong>Presser foot attachment</strong>&lt;br&gt;Attach the embroidery foot “Q”. For details on attaching the embroidery foot, refer to “Attaching the embroidery foot” (page 147).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2</strong></td>
<td><strong>Checking the needle</strong>&lt;br&gt;Use a needle matched to the fabric. For details on replacing the needle, refer to “Replacing the needle” (page 42).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3</strong></td>
<td><strong>Embroidery unit attachment</strong>&lt;br&gt;Attach the embroidery unit. For details on attaching the embroidery unit, refer to “Attaching the embroidery unit” (page 150).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4</strong></td>
<td><strong>Replacing the bobbin case</strong>&lt;br&gt;When using other kinds of embroidery bobbin thread, use the optional alternate bobbin case (no color on the screw). For details on replacing the bobbin case, refer to “Cleaning the race” (page 184).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5</strong></td>
<td><strong>Bobbin thread setup</strong>&lt;br&gt;For the bobbin thread, wind embroidery bobbin thread and set it in place. For details on setting up the bobbin thread, refer to “Winding/Installing the Bobbin” (page 25).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6</strong></td>
<td><strong>Fabric preparation</strong>&lt;br&gt;Attach a stabilizer material to the fabric, and hoop it in an embroidery frame. For details on preparing the fabric, refer to “Preparing the Fabric” (page 153).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>7</strong></td>
<td><strong>Embroidery frame attachment</strong>&lt;br&gt;Attach the embroidery frame to the embroidery unit. For details on attaching the embroidery frame, refer to “Attaching the Embroidery Frame” (page 157).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>8</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pattern selection</strong>&lt;br&gt;Select an embroidery pattern. For details on selecting embroidery patterns, refer to “Selecting Embroidery Patterns” (page 159).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>9</strong></td>
<td><strong>Checking the layout</strong>&lt;br&gt;Check and adjust the size and position of the embroidery. For details on adjusting the layout, refer to “Adjusting the layout” (page 171).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10</strong></td>
<td><strong>Embroidery thread setup</strong>&lt;br&gt;Set up embroidery thread according to the pattern. For details on setting up the thread, refer to “Upper Threading” (page 31).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Attaching the Embroidery Foot

This section describes how to attach the embroidery foot.

**Attaching the embroidery foot**

Attach the embroidery foot when embroidering. Have the included embroidery foot “Q” and a screwdriver ready.

**Embroidery foot bar**

**Caught by the presser foot holder screw**

**CAUTION**

- Always use the embroidery foot “Q” when embroidering. If the wrong presser foot is used, the needle may hit the presser foot and break or bend.

1. Press ("Needle Position" button) once or twice to raise the needle.

   - “Needle Position” button
   - The needle goes up.

2. Turn off the sewing machine.

   - Black button
   - Presser foot holder

**CAUTION**

- Before replacing the presser foot, be sure to turn off the sewing machine, otherwise injuries may occur if (“Start/Stop” button) is accidentally pressed and the machine starts sewing.

3. Raise the presser foot lever.

   - Presser foot lever
   - The presser foot is raised.
   - At the time of purchase, the presser foot lever is up.

4. Press and hold the black button on the back of the presser foot holder to detach the presser foot.
Loosen the presser foot holder screw and remove the presser foot holder.
Turn the screwdriver toward the back.

Hold the embroidery foot with your right hand, as shown.
Hold the embroidery foot with your index finger wrapped around the lever at the back of the foot.

While pressing in the lever with your finger, fit the embroidery foot bar over the needle clamp screw to attach the embroidery foot to the presser foot bar.

Secure the embroidery foot with the presser foot holder screw.
Set the embroidery foot perpendicular.

Firmly tighten the presser foot holder screw.
Turn the screwdriver toward the front.

---

**CAUTION**

- Do not hit the needle with your finger or the embroidery foot “Q” when attaching it. The needle may break or cause injury.
- Be sure to tighten the screw with the included screwdriver. If the screw is loose, the needle may hit the presser foot and break or bend.
- Before sewing, always turn the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) slowly to make sure that the needle does not hit the presser foot. Otherwise, the needle may break or bend.
Removing the embroidery foot

1. Press ① ("Needle Position" button) once or twice to raise the needle.

2. Turn off the sewing machine.

3. Raise the presser foot lever.

4. While pressing in the lever at the back of the embroidery foot with your finger, loosen the presser foot holder screw, and then remove embroidery foot "Q".
   Turn the screwdriver toward the back.

5. Attach the presser foot holder.
   - For details, refer to “Attaching the presser foot holder” (page 46).

CAUTION

- Before removing the embroidery foot, be sure to turn off the sewing machine. Otherwise, injuries may occur if one of the operation buttons is accidentally pressed and the machine starts sewing.
**Attaching the Embroidery Unit**

This section describes how to attach the embroidery unit.

**Embroidery unit precautions**

Cautions for the embroidery unit will be explained below.

**CAUTION**

- Do not move the sewing machine with the embroidery unit in place. The embroidery unit may be dropped and cause injury.
- Keep your hands and other objects away from the embroidery carriage and frame. Otherwise injury may result.

**Note**

- Do not touch the connector in the embroidery unit connector slot. The connector could be damaged, and it may cause malfunctions.
- Do not lift up on the embroidery carriage, and do not forcefully move it. It may cause malfunctions.

**Attaching the embroidery unit**

Get the included embroidery unit ready.

1. Turn off the sewing machine.

2. Pull the flat bed attachment off to the left.

3. Slide the tab on the cover of the connection port in the direction of the arrow to open the cover.

**Note**

- Be sure to close the cover of the connection port when the embroidery unit is not being used.
Slide the embroidery unit onto the sewing machine arm.
Push it in until it clicks and stops.

The embroidery unit is attached.

Turn on the sewing machine.

The confirmation message is displayed.

Be sure that no objects or hands are near the embroidery unit and press OK.

The carriage of the embroidery unit will move.

- When an animation is displayed on the screen, the message above will be displayed if you touch the screen with your finger.
- The carriage moves to its initial position.

CAUTION

- Do not put your hands or other objects near the carriage. It may cause injury.

Note

- If the machine is initialized with hands or objects near the carriage, the screen may return to the initial display. After removing whatever is near the carriage, turn the power on again.
- The screen for selecting the embroidery pattern type is displayed.

For details on the embroidery patterns, refer to “Selecting Embroidery Patterns” (page 159).

Memo

- Utility stitches cannot be selected when the embroidery unit is attached.
Removing the embroidery unit

Make sure that the sewing machine is completely stopped and follow the instructions below.

1. Remove the embroidery frame.
   - For details on removing the embroidery frame, refer to “Removing the embroidery frame” (page 158).

2. Press [ ], and then press [ ].
   - The embroidery carriage moves into a position where it can be stored.

3. Turn off the sewing machine.

4. Hold the release button on the bottom left of the embroidery unit, and slowly pull the embroidery unit to the left.
   - The embroidery unit separates from the sewing machine.

CAUTION
- Always turn off the sewing machine before removing the embroidery unit. It may cause malfunctions if removed when the machine is turned on.

- Do not carry the embroidery unit by holding the release button compartment.
Preparing the Fabric

After attaching a stabilizer material to the embroidery fabric, it is stretched on an embroidery frame.

**Attaching an optional stabilizer material to the fabric**

Attach a stabilizer material for embroidery to the fabric to prevent poor quality embroidery designs.

**Memo**

- We recommend the stabilizer material for embroidery. Use a water soluble stabilizer on thin materials like organdy and fabrics with a nap like towels. For details, refer to “Optional accessories” (page 12).

**Note**

- Always use stabilizer material for embroidery with stretch fabrics, thin fabrics, fabrics with a loose weave and fabrics where stitches easily contract.

**CAUTION**

- Always use stabilizer material when sewing embroidery projects. The needle may break or bend if you embroider without using a stabilizer material for thin fabrics or stretch fabrics. Furthermore, the pattern may be sewn incorrectly.

1. Prepare stabilizer material that is larger than the embroidery frame being used.

   ![Diagram](image)

   - Fabric
   - Size of embroidery frame
   - Stabilizer material

2. If you are using stabilizers with adhesive, place the adhesive surface of the stabilizer material against the wrong side of the fabric, and iron it with a steam iron.

   ![Diagram](image)

   - Stabilizer material
   - Fabric (wrong side)
   - Attached surface

- When it cannot be ironed or placed in the hoop.
  
  For fabrics, such as towels, which cannot be ironed or for embroidering in places where ironing is difficult, place the stabilizer material under the fabric, and stretch the fabric in the embroidery frame without attaching the stabilizer.
Setting the fabric in the embroidery frame

The fabric is stretched in the embroidery frame. If the fabric is loose, the quality of the embroidery pattern may be poor. Put the fabric in the frame without slack following the steps below. Have a fabric with a stabilizer material attached and the embroidery frame (medium, small, large or extra large (multi-position)) ready.

■ Embroidery frame (large)
Embroidery can be done in an area with a height of up to 18 cm (7 inches) and a width of up to 13 cm (5 inches). This is used to embroider multiple patterns without changing the fabric position in the frame.

■ Embroidery frame (medium)[option]
Patterns with a height of up to 10 cm (4 inches) and a width of up to 10 cm (4 inches) can be sewn.

■ Embroidery frame (small)[option]
Patterns with a height of up to 2 cm (1 inch) and a width of up to 6 cm (2-1/2 inches) can be sewn. This is used for letters and other small embroidery.

• There are patterns for which embroidery frame (small) cannot be used.

■ Embroidery frame (extra large (multi-position))
Embroidery can be done in an area with a height of up to 30 cm (12 inches) and a width of up to 13 cm (5 inches). This is used to embroider connected or combined characters or patterns, or large patterns.

CAUTION

• Use the embroidery frame that matches the size of the pattern being embroidered. Otherwise, the embroidery frame may be hit by the presser foot and cause injury or needle breakage.

1. Loosen the embroidery frame adjustment screw and remove the inner and outer frames, placing the outer frame on a flat surface. Separate the inner and outer frame by removing inner frame upward.

2. Place the fabric with the stabilizer material on top of the outer frame. Have the right side of the cloth up.

3. Press the inner frame in from the top of the fabric. Line up △ on the inner frame and ▽ on outer frame.
Tighten the adjustment screw by hand just enough to secure the fabric.

Gently remove the fabric from the frame without loosening the adjustment screw.

Memo
- This precautionary step will help reduce pattern distortion while embroidering.

Press the inner frame in from the top of the fabric again, lining up △ on the inner frame and ▽ on outer frame.

Tighten the adjustment screw while removing any slack in the fabric by hand. The goal is to have a drum-like sound when the stretched fabric is struck lightly.

Using embroidery sheets
- If the embroidery sheet attached to the embroidery frame is used, the embroidery can be sewn in exactly the right position on the fabric.

Make a mark with a chalk pen at the center of the position for the pattern to be embroidered.

Out frame
2 Inner frame
3 Fabric (right side)
4 Stabilizer material
5 Ledge of outer frame

- Press down firmly until the inner frame is securely pressed against the ledge of the outer frame.
Place the embroidery sheet on the inner frame.

Line the mark on the fabric up with the base line on the embroidery sheet.

Place the inner frame with the fabric on the outer frame and stretch the fabric.

Remove the embroidery sheet.

**Embroidery on fabrics that cannot be stretched on an embroidery frame**

When small pieces of fabric that cannot be stretched on an embroidery frame or thin pieces like ribbon are being embroidered, use stabilizer material as a base to stretch on the frame. We recommend stabilizer material for all embroidery.

For details, refer to page 154.

After completing the embroidery, remove the stabilizer material carefully.
Attaching the Embroidery Frame

This section describes how to attach the embroidery frame.

**Attaching the embroidery frame**

1. Wind the embroidery bobbin thread onto the bobbin and set it into the bobbin case.
   - For details, refer to “Winding/Installing the Bobbin” (page 25).

2. Raise the presser foot lever.

3. Pass the embroidery frame under the presser foot while raising the presser foot lever even further.

   ![Diagram of presser foot lever](image)
   
   ① Presser foot lever

   ![Diagram of mounting brackets and pins](image)
   
   ① Mounting brackets
   ② Pins

**CAUTION**

- Do not hit the needle with your finger or the embroidery frame. It may cause injury or needle breakage.

4. While lightly holding the lever on the frame holder to the left, align the two pins on the embroidery frame holder with the mounting brackets on the frame, and then press the frame into the embroidery frame holder until a click is heard.

   After pressing the front mounting bracket onto the pin so that it clicks into place, press the back mounting bracket into place.

   ![Diagram of frame holder and mounting brackets](image)
   
   ③ Lever

**Note**

- Be sure to insert both pins. If only the forward or the back pin is inserted, the pattern may not turn out correctly.

**CAUTION**

- Correctly set the embroidery frame into the embroidery frame holder. Otherwise, the presser foot may hit the embroidery frame, resulting in injury.
Removing the embroidery frame

Make sure that the sewing machine is completely stopped and follow the instructions below.

1. Raise the presser foot lever.

2. While pushing the lever of the embroidery frame holder to the left, lift the embroidery frame up to remove it.
   Remove the back mounting bracket from the pin, and then remove the front mounting bracket from the pin.

3. Pass the embroidery frame under the presser foot while raising the presser foot lever even further.

CAUTION

- Do not hit the needle with your finger or the embroidery frame. It may cause injury or needle breakage.
Selecting Embroidery Patterns

This section provides details on the various types of embroidery patterns available and the procedure for selecting a pattern.

Copyright information

The patterns saved in the sewing machine and embroidery cards are intended for private use only. Any public or commercial use of copyrighted patterns is an infringement of copyright law and is strictly prohibited.

Embroidery pattern types

An embroidery pattern can be selected from the following types available.

- Embroidery patterns
- Additional embroidery patterns
- Alphabet patterns
- Frame patterns
- Embroidery card
- Patterns saved in the machine’s memory
- Patterns retrieved from a USB flash drive (USB flash memory)

■ Embroidery patterns (Embroidery patterns/Additional embroidery patterns)
There are total 136 patterns. The patterns are completed by changing the upper thread according to the instructions displayed on the screen.
- For details, refer to “Selecting an embroidery pattern” (page 162).

■ Alphabet patterns
There are 6 types of characters (European characters); upper case/lower case/numbers/symbols.
- For details, refer to “Selecting characters” (page 163).

■ Frame patterns
10 shapes, such as squares and circles, can be combined with 12 stitch types.
- For details, refer to “Selecting a frame pattern” (page 164).

■ Embroidery card (sold separately)
Patterns from an embroidery card can be embroidered.
- For details, refer to “Using an embroidery card (sold separately)” (page 165).

■ Patterns saved in the machine’s memory
Patterns, such as frequently used character combinations, can be saved in the machine’s memory to be retrieved later and embroidered. Patterns consisting of up to 12 patterns or 512 KB can be saved.
- For details, refer to “Saving patterns” (page 180).

■ Patterns retrieved from a USB flash drive (USB flash memory)
Patterns retrieved from USB media can be embroidered.

Note
- Only a USB flash drive (USB flash memory) can be connected to the USB port on this machine.
- For details, refer to “Transferring embroidery patterns from the computer to machine” (page 181).
**LCD (liquid crystal display) operation**

The LCD (liquid crystal display) is operated using the operation keys on the operation panel. The use of the keys for embroidery will be explained below.

### Operation keys

![Operation Keys Diagram]

- **Returns to the previous screen.**
- **When there are patterns that are not displayed on the screen (when **<** or **>** is displayed), the previous patterns/subsequent patterns are displayed.**
- **Returns to the type selection screen. The selected pattern is cancelled.**
- **Press this key to adjust language or change the thread color display or other settings.**

Press **(Settings key).**

**NAME OF COLOR:** Typical color name  
**TIME:** Time required for embroidering  
**NEEDLE COUNT:** Needle progress number  
**#123:** Select from the following thread color number sets

- EMBROIDERY (POLYESTER) THREAD#
- COUNTRY (COTTON) THREAD#
- MADEIRA POLY THREAD#
- MADEIRA RAYON THREAD#
- SULKY THREAD#
- ROBISON-ANTON POLY THREAD#

**DISPLAY UNIT**
The measurement units that are displayed can be selected. [mm/inch]

**EMBROIDERY TENSION**
The thread tension for embroidering can be adjusted. [-8 to +8]

**MAX EMBROIDERY SPEED (SPM)**
The maximum embroidering speed can be selected. [650SPM/350SPM]
■ LCD button

When a specific pattern is selected, press this key and then, press \( \rightarrow \) to switch the display. The sewing settings such as the specified alphabet character string and color are confirmed.

Press this key to change the thread settings.

Press this key to select or cancel programmed thread cutting.

Press \( \geq \) or \( \leq \) to adjust the thread tension.

Press \( \geq \) or \( \leq \) to change the thread density (character patterns only).

Press this key to adjust the pattern.

Press this key when you want to change the color character by character in character embroidery. Since the sewing machine stops at the end of each character, the upper thread is changed as you sew. Press this key again to cancel multi-color.

The needle progresses one color or one stitch (if pressed continuously, 9 stitches to 20 stitches) at a time and changes the position for starting the embroidery. This is used when a specific color is not sewn or when restarting the sewing machine after power has been turned off in the middle of the operation.

Press this key to change the thread settings.

Press \( \geq \) or \( \leq \) to adjust the thread tension.

Press \( \geq \) or \( \leq \) to change the thread density (character patterns only).

Press this key to adjust the pattern.

Press this key when you want to change the color character by character in character embroidery. Since the sewing machine stops at the end of each character, the upper thread is changed as you sew. Press this key again to cancel multi-color.

The position of the pattern within the embroidery frame can be checked, and the size and angle can be changed.

For details, refer to “Resewing” (page 175).

The position of the pattern within the embroidery frame can be checked, and the size and angle can be changed.

For details, refer to “Adjusting the layout” (page 171).

Memo

Keys that appear surrounded with a dotted line cannot be used.
Selecting an embroidery pattern

There are total of 136 embroidery patterns, such as fruits and animals, saved in the machine's memory.

Memo

Refer to “Embroidery Pattern Color Change Table” in the Quick reference guide for samples of completed patterns and the thread used.

Select the type of the embroidery pattern.

1. The pattern selection screen is displayed.

Select the pattern.

Switch the screen using ‹ (Previous page key) and › (Next page key).

- When ‹/› is pressed, the display of patterns moves forward or backward in increments of 10 designs.

When a pattern is selected, it can be embroidered.
Selecting characters

Specify the characters for embroidery.

Memo

- When “The pattern is too large for the embroidery frame.” is displayed, no more characters can be input.
- Characters of different styles (sans serif, serif, and outline, etc.) cannot be combined.

1. Select the character stitches.

2. Select the character style.

3. Select the characters.
   - If a wrong character was selected, press delete.
   - To enter a space, press “_”.

Example: Welcome

Switch between uppercase/lowercase
Switch among large/medium/small sizes
The character pattern that you created can be saved for later use. For details, refer to “Saving patterns” (page 180).

Selecting a frame pattern

10 shapes, such as squares and circles, can be combined with 12 stitch types.

Memo

- Refer to “Frame patterns” in the Quick reference guide for frame pattern shapes and stitches.

1 Press the frame pattern.

- The frame shape selection screen is displayed.

2 Select the frame shape.

Switch the screen using (Previous page key) (Next page key), and select from the ten types.

- The stitch selection screen is displayed.

3 Select the stitch.

Switch the screen using (Previous page key) (Next page key), and select from the 12 stitches.

- When a stitch is selected, it can be embroidered.
Selecting Embroidery Patterns

Using an embroidery card (sold separately)

If an embroidery card is used, you can embroider patterns other than the patterns saved in the sewing machine. There are various cards with different themes.

Note

- Always turn off the sewing machine to insert and remove embroidery cards.
- Insert the embroidery card into the embroidery card slot, facing it in the right direction.
- Do not put anything other than an embroidery card in the embroidery card slot.
- When embroidery cards are not in use, keep them in their storage cases.
- Use only embroidery cards manufactured for this machine. Using unauthorized cards may cause your machine to operate incorrectly.
- Embroidery cards purchased in foreign countries may not work with your machine.
- Large patterns supplied on embroidery cards may be difficult to view on the screen.

1. Turn off the sewing machine.

2. Insert the embroidery card in the embroidery card slot on the right side of the sewing machine. Face the arrow on the embroidery card toward you, and insert it in the direction of the arrow.

3. Turn on the sewing machine.

4. Press the embroidery card on the screen.

   ![Embroidery Card on Screen]

   The selection screen for the patterns saved in the card is displayed.

5. Select a pattern.

   The operation is the same as in “Selecting Embroidery Patterns” (page 159).
Embroidering

After the preparations are done, you can try embroidering. This section describes the steps for embroidering and appliquéing.

Sewing attractive finishes

There are many factors that go into sewing beautiful embroidery. Using the appropriate stabilizer (page 153) and hooping the fabric in the frame (page 154) are two important factors mentioned earlier. Another important point is the appropriateness of the needle and thread being used. See the explanation of threads below. Included with this machine are two bobbin cases. Follow the explanation below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thread</th>
<th>Upper thread</th>
<th>Bobbin thread</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use embroidery thread, or country embroidery thread intended for use with this machine. Other embroidery threads may not yield optimum results.</td>
<td>Use embroidery bobbin thread intended for use with this machine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mem

- If you use threads other than those listed above, the embroidery may not sew out correctly.

Bobbin case

- Standard bobbin case (green marking on the screw) is in the machine for sewing and embroidery. The bobbin case originally installed in the machine has a green screw.
- Alternate bobbin case (no color on the screw) is set with tighter tension for embroidery with different weights of bobbin threads and a variety of embroidery techniques. This bobbin case is identified with a dark colored mark on the inside of the bobbin cavity. The screw on this case can be adjusted if necessary.

Note

- For details on how to remove the bobbin case, refer to “Cleaning the race” (page 184).
- For details on adjusting the alternate bobbin case, refer to “Adjusting the alternate bobbin case (with no color on the screw)” (page 174).
Embroidering a pattern

Embroidery patterns are embroidered with a change of thread after each color.

1 Prepare embroidery thread of the color shown on the screen.

   a Embroidery frames that can be used for embroidering
   b Current color step/Number of colors in design
   c Current name of color
   d Current color part
   e Next color part

   - The thread color number set displayed for the thread colors can be changed. Press (Settings key), and then change the setting in the settings screen. For details, refer to “LCD (liquid crystal display) operation” (page 160).

2 Set the embroidery thread, and thread the needle.

   - Refer to “Threading the upper thread” (page 32) and “Threading the needle” (page 34).

   a Before using the needle threader, be sure to lower the presser foot.

3 Pass the thread through the embroidery foot hole, and hold it lightly in your left hand. Give the thread a little slack.

   - If the thread is pulled too tight, the needle may break or bend.
   - Do not let hands or objects hit the carriage while sewing. The pattern may misalign.
4 Lower the presser foot lever.

5 Press  (“Start/Stop” button).

6 After progressing 5-6 stitches, press  (“Start/Stop” button) to stop the machine.

7 Use scissors to cut the thread at the beginning of the stitching.

8 Press  (“Start/Stop” button) again.
   - The embroidery begins again.
   - Stitching stops automatically with reinforcement after one color has been completed. When automatic thread cutting is set, the thread is cut.

9 Set up embroidery thread for the next color, and repeat steps 1 through 9.

10 Cut the excess thread.
   - When the last color is sewn, “Finished sewing.” will appear on the display. Press [OK], and the display will return to the initial screen.

Memo
- For the automatic cutting setting, refer to “LCD (liquid crystal display) operation” (page 160).

- If the thread is left at the beginning of the stitching, it may be sewn over as you continue embroidering the pattern, making it very difficult to deal with the thread after the pattern is finished. Trim the thread at the beginning.
**Appliquéing**

Prepare the base fabric and the appliqué fabric (appliqué piece). Press \[\text{Settings key}\] (Settings key), and set the thread color display to NAME OF COLOR, so “APPLIQUE MATERIAL”, “APPLIQUE POSITION” and “APPLIQUE” are displayed on the screen.

1. Select an appliqué pattern.

2. When “APPLIQUE MATERIAL” is displayed on the screen, apply iron-on stabilizer to the back of the appliqué piece fabric, and stretch it on the embroidery frame.

3. Lower the presser foot lever, and press \[\text{“Start/Stop” button}\] (“Start/Stop” button).
   - The cut-out for the appliqué piece is sewn, and the sewing machine stops.

4. Remove the fabric from the embroidery frame, and cut it out along the cut-out line.
   - Cut carefully along the stitching and remove the thread.
   - If it is not cut right on the stitching, it will not be finished neatly.

5. Stretch the base fabric on the embroidery frame.

6. Set up the thread for appliquéing.

7. Lower the presser foot lever, and press \[\text{“Start/Stop” button}\] (“Start/Stop” button).
   - The position for the appliqué is stitched, and the sewing machine stops.

8. Apply a thin layer of fabric glue or spray adhesive to the back of the appliqué piece, and attach it in the appliqué position.


10. Set up the thread for appliquéing.

11. Lower the presser foot lever, and press \[\text{“Start/Stop” button}\] (“Start/Stop” button).
   - “APPLIQUE” will be displayed on the screen.

12. Apply a thin layer of fabric glue or spray adhesive to the back of the appliqué piece, and attach it in the appliqué position.
9 Lower the presser foot lever, and press \( \text{Start/Stop} \) button.

**Note**

- When “APPLIQUE MATERIAL”, “APPLIQUE POSITION” and “APPLIQUE” are displayed, a specific color thread does not appear. Use a proper color thread to match the appliqué piece.

10 Follow the instructions on the screen, and change thread colors as you sew.
This section describes ways to edit, adjust, and reposition patterns.

**Adjusting the layout**

The pattern is normally positioned in the center of the embroidery frame. You can check the layout before starting embroidery and change the position and the size.

**Memo**

- Keys that appear surrounded with a dotted line cannot be used.

1. After selecting the embroidery pattern, press \[ \text{[DEMO]} \].
   - The embroidery screen is displayed.

2. Press \[ \text{[LAYOUT]} \].
   - The layout screen is displayed.

3. Check and adjust the layout.

   - **Embroidery frame size**: These flash if the pattern was resized, the layout was adjusted, or the recommended embroidery frame size was changed. Embroidery frame icons that appear in gray cannot be used.
   - **Size key**: Increases/decreases the size of the pattern. Press \[ \text{[SIZE]} \] to return to the previous screen.
   - **Decreases size**
   - **Returns to original size**
   - **Returns to center position (when the pattern was moved with the change position key)**
   - **Increases size**
   - **Change position keys**: Moves the embroidery position up, down, left and right.
Memo

If you make a note of the values in the lower part of screen when you change the size and position, you can sew with the same size and layout even if you have to turn the power back on in the middle of your work.

Layout key
Press this key to move to rotation screen.

Rotation key
Rotates the pattern one degree, 10 degrees or 90 degrees at a time.

• Press \( \rightarrow \) (Back key) to return to the previous screen.

Starting point key
Press this key to move the embroidery frame and check the embroidering position or to change the needle position before embroidering. The screen below appears when this key is pressed.

• Press \( \rightarrow \) to return to the previous screen.

CAUTION

Never lower the needle when the embroidery frame is moving. The needle may break or bend.

When you have revised the pattern, check the display of available embroidery frames and use an appropriate frame. If you use an embroidery frame not displayed as available for use, the presser foot may strike the frame and possibly cause injury.
Press  (Back key) to return to the original screen.

**Memo**

- When the power is turned off, the layout returns to the original setting.
- You can also check the pattern size and distance from the center by pressing  after beginning embroidering.

---

### Adjusting the thread tension

If embroidery fails, it is difficult to undo the thread and the fabric may be damaged. Before embroidering, use a scrap of the same fabric to check the adjustment of the thread tension, etc.

To adjust the thread tension, press  (Settings key).

Press  to weaken the thread tension.
Press  to tighten the thread tension.

#### Correct thread tension

The thread tension is correct when upper thread is just visible on back of the fabric.

1. Right side
2. Wrong side

#### Upper thread is too tight

The lower thread will be visible on the front of the fabric. In this instance, decrease the upper thread tension.

1. Right side
2. Wrong side

#### Upper thread is too loose

The upper thread has slack. In this instance, increase the upper thread tension.

1. Right side
2. Wrong side
**Adjusting the alternate bobbin case (with no color on the screw)**

When using the embroidery bobbin thread provided, please be sure to choose the green marked bobbin case when performing utility stitch sewing and embroidery functions. When in the embroidery function mode, the alternate bobbin case (with no color on the screw) should be selected when substitute embroidery bobbin threads (other than what is accompanied with your machine) are being used. The alternate bobbin case (with no color on the screw) can be easily adjusted when bobbin tension changes are required to accommodate different bobbin threads. Refer to “Sewing attractive finishes” (page 166).

To adjust the bobbin tension for embroidery function, using the alternate bobbin case (with no color on the screw), turn the slotted screw (-) with a (small) screwdriver.

1. Do not turn a phillips screw (+).
2. Adjust with a screwdriver (small).

#### Correct tension
Upper thread slightly appears on the wrong side of fabric.

- Right side
- Wrong side

#### Bobbin thread is too loose
Bobbin thread appears slightly on the right side of fabric.

- Right side
- Wrong side

If this occurs, turn the slotted screw (-) clockwise, being careful not to over-tighten the screw, approximately 30-45 degrees to increase bobbin tension.

---

**CAUTION**

- When adjusting the alternate bobbin case, be sure to remove the bobbin from the alternate bobbin case.
- DO NOT adjust the position of the phillips (+) screw on the alternate bobbin case as this may result in damage to the bobbin case, rendering it unusable.
- If the slotted screw (-) is difficult to turn, do not use force. Turning the screw too much or providing force in either (rotational) direction may cause damage to the bobbin case. Should damage occur, the bobbin case may not maintain proper tension.

---

**Bobbin thread is too tight**
Upper thread on the right side of fabric seems to be lifting/looping and bobbin thread is not seen on the wrong side of fabric.

1. Right side
2. Wrong side

If this occurs, turn the slotted screw (-) counterclockwise, being careful not to over-loosen the screw, approximately 30-45 degrees to decrease bobbin tension.
Resewing

When the wrong upper thread color has been sewn, it can be resewn with the correct color.

1. Press ("Start/Stop" button) to stop the sewing machine.

2. Press [JUST].

3. Press [\1/4].

4. Press [ ] (Back one color) to return to the beginning of the mistaken color.

5. Set up the correct color for the upper thread.

6. Press ("Start/Stop" button) to continue the design.

Thread runs out partway through a design

When the upper thread or the bobbin thread runs out while sewing, the sewing machine stops. Move the needle back about 10 stitches and resume sewing.

1. Set up the upper or bobbin thread.

2. Press [JUST].

3. Press [\1/4].

4. Press [ ] (Back one stitch) to move the needle back about 10 stitches.

   Forward one stitch increases the stitch number.

5. Restart the embroidery.
Stopping while embroidering

If the embroidery is stopped before it is complete, check the current needle count before turning off the sewing machine.

Memo

- When the sewing machine is turned off, the embroidery size and layout return to the original setting.

1. Press  (“Start/Stop” button) to stop the sewing machine.

2. Check the current needle count on the screen and make a note of it.

If the needle count is not displayed, press (Settings key), and then use ▼ ▼ to display the following screen.

3. Press (Embroidery key).

   ▶ The confirmation message is displayed.

4. Press OK.

   ▶ The selected pattern is deleted, and the screen for selecting the embroidery pattern type is displayed.

5. Turn off the sewing machine.

   - Always detach the embroidery unit when you move the sewing machine.

6. Turn on the sewing machine and select the pattern.

7. Press ADJUST.
8 Press \[ \text{V-4} \].

9 Press \[ \text{I+} \] (Forward one color) to move to the beginning of the color you want to embroider.

10 Press \[ \text{I+} \] (Forward one stitch) to increase the needle count.
   If \[ \text{I+} \] is pressed continuously, it moves forward 1 \(\rightarrow\) 9 \(\rightarrow\) 30 stitches.

Move forward to about 10 stitches before the total number of stitches confirmed in 3.

11 Restart the embroidery.
Using the Memory Function

Embroidery data precautions

Observe the following precautions when using embroidery data other than that created and saved in this machine.

CAUTION

- When using embroidery data other than our original patterns, the thread or needle may break when sewing with a stitch density that is too fine or when sewing three or more overlapping stitches. In that case, use one of our original data design systems to edit the embroidery data.

- Types of Embroidery Data That Can Be Used
  - Only .pes and .dst embroidery data files can be used with this machine. Using data other than that saved using our data design systems or sewing machines may cause the embroidery machine to malfunction.

- Types of USB Media That Can Be Used
  Embroidery data can be recalled from a USB flash drive (USB flash memory) of any size.

Note

- Only a USB flash drive (USB flash memory) can be connected to the USB port on this machine.
- Some USB media may not be compatible with this machine. Visit our website for more details.
- When using USB media equipped with an access indicator, the access indicator will begin flashing after the media is inserted into your computer or machine, and may take about 5 to 6 seconds before the media is recognized. (The length of time differs depending on the USB media.)
- For additional information, refer to the instruction manual included with the USB media that you have purchased.

Memo

- Letters and numerals can be used in file names. In addition, if the file name contains no more than eight characters, the entire file name will appear on the screen. If the file name is more than eight characters long, only the first six characters followed by “~” and a number appear as the file name. This applies to .dst embroidery data files only.
- Only the names of .dst files are displayed.

- Precautions on Using the Computer To Create and Save Data
  - If the file name of embroidery data cannot be identified, for example, because the name contains special characters, the file will not be displayed. If this occurs, change the name of the file. We recommend using the 26 letters of the alphabet (uppercase and lowercase), the numbers 0 through 9, “-“, and “_“.
  - All designs must be within the 18 cm (H) x 13 cm (W) (Approx. 7 inches (H) x 5 inches (W)) design field size. If the selected pattern does not fit within the 18 cm (H) x 13 cm (W) (Approx. 7 inches (H) x 5 inches (W)) design field size unless it is rotated 90 degrees, a message appears, asking if you wish to rotate the pattern 90 degrees.
  - .pes files saved with the number of stitches, the number of colors and the number of combined patterns exceeding the specified limits cannot be displayed. Use one of our original data design systems to edit the embroidery pattern so that it meets the required specifications.
  - Even if the embroidery unit is not attached, the machine will recognize embroidery data.
  - Save the patterns in the root directory of the USB media. If embroidery data is saved in a folder on USB media, that embroidery data cannot be retrieved by the machine.
Tajima (.dst) Embroidery Data

- When a .dst file is imported, the only way that you can view the design is by selecting the pattern (file name).
  Then press $\mathbb{E}$ to display the design on the screen.
Saving patterns

The embroidery patterns and the alphabet characters you have customized can be saved in the sewing machine’s memory. Since the saved patterns will not be erased when the power is turned off, you can always retrieve them for embroidery. This is convenient for saving names and the like. You can save up to 12 patterns or 512 KB of data.

Saving a pattern

1. After selecting the pattern to be saved, press (Memory key).

   After the pattern is saved, the initial screen appears again.

   Note
   - Do not turn off the sewing machine while the pattern is being saved, otherwise the pattern data may be lost.

Retrieving a pattern

1. Press .

   The saved patterns are displayed.

2. Select the pattern you wish to retrieve.

   Switch screens using (Previous page key) and (Next page key).

3. To delete the saved pattern, press .

   The saved pattern is retrieved.

   The embroidery screen appears, and you can embroider the retrieved pattern.

   Note
   - Characters saved from an embroidery card must have the embroidery card inserted in the machine in order to retrieve the memory saved from the embroidery card.
Transferring embroidery patterns from the computer to machine

**Note**
- Only a USB flash drive (USB flash memory) can be connected to the USB port on this machine.
- An embroidery pattern can be transferred to the machine from USB media containing data for no more than 200 embroidery patterns.
- Embroidery patterns cannot be transferred to the machine if the USB media contains data for more than 200 embroidery patterns. In this case, reduce the number of designs saved on the USB media.
- In addition, if the embroidery designs contain too many colors (this number may vary within the designs themselves), it may not be possible to transfer an embroidery pattern to the machine, even if there are less than 200 embroidery patterns that have been saved on the USB media. In this case also, reduce the number of designs saved on the USB media.
- Embroidery patterns cannot be transferred to the machine if the USB media contains data for more than 200 embroidery patterns. In this case also, reduce the number of designs saved on the USB media.
- Save the patterns in the root directory of the USB media. If embroidery data is saved in a folder on USB media, that embroidery data cannot be retrieved by the machine.

1. Insert the USB media into the USB port on the computer.

2. The “Removable Disk” icon appears in “Computer (My computer)” on the computer.

3. Copy the pattern data to “Removable Disk”.

4. Safely remove the USB media from the USB port on the computer.

**CAUTION**
- Before disconnecting the USB media, click the “Unplug or Eject Hardware” icon in the taskbar of Windows® 2000 or the “Safely Remove Hardware” icon in the taskbar of Windows® XP/Windows Vista®. Then, when the removable disk can safely be removed, disconnect the USB media from the computer.

Windows® XP

Windows Vista®
5 Insert the USB media into the USB port on the machine.

6 Press .

The saved patterns are displayed.

7 Select the pattern you wish to retrieve.
Switch screens using (Previous page key) and (Next page key).

Number of the currently displayed page from the total number of pages

• When / is pressed, the display of patterns moves forward or backward in increments of 10 designs.

• The selected pattern is shown in reverse highlighting.

8 Press .

The saved pattern is retrieved.

The embroidery screen appears, and you can embroider the retrieved pattern.

9 Adjust the pattern as desired, and then begin embroidering.

### Note

- If the message “Reduce the number of patterns.” appears, the USB media may contain either more than 200 embroidery patterns or the embroidery designs may contain too many colors (although there may be no more than 200 patterns). In this case, unplug the USB media from the machine, plug it back into the computer, and then delete a few designs at a time from the USB media. Close the error message on the machine, and then repeat procedures starting from step 5.

### Memo

- The pattern file names appear in alphabetical order.
- Only the names of .dst files are displayed.
The various maintenance and troubleshooting procedures are described in this chapter.

Care and Maintenance ..........................................................................................184
Restrictions on oiling........................................................................................184
Precautions on storing the machine .................................................................184
Cleaning the machine surface ..........................................................................184
Cleaning the race .............................................................................................184
Troubleshooting ....................................................................................................186
Frequent troubleshooting topics.......................................................................186
Upper thread tightened up...............................................................................186
Tangled thread on wrong side of fabric............................................................187
Incorrect thread tension...................................................................................189
Fabric is caught in the machine and cannot be removed .................................190
When the thread became tangled under the bobbin winder seat .....................193
List of symptoms ..............................................................................................195
Error messages .................................................................................................201
Adjusting the LCD ............................................................................................204
Operation beep ................................................................................................204
Canceling the operation beep ..........................................................................205
Upgrading Your Machine’s Software Using USB Media .................................206
Index .....................................................................................................................207
Care and Maintenance

Simple sewing machine maintenance operations are described below.

Restrictions on oiling

In order to prevent damaging this machine, it must not be oiled by the user. This machine was manufactured with the necessary amount of oil applied to ensure correct operation, making periodic oiling unnecessary. If problems occur, such as difficulty turning the handwheel or an unusual noise, immediately stop using the machine, and contact your authorized dealer or the nearest authorized service center.

Precautions on storing the machine

Do not store the machine in any of the locations described below, otherwise damage to the machine may result, for example, rust caused by condensation.
- Exposed to extremely high temperatures
- Exposed to extremely low temperatures
- Exposed to extreme temperature changes
- Exposed to high humidity or steam
- Near a flame, heater or air conditioner
- Outdoor or exposed to direct sunlight
- Exposed to extremely dusty or oily environments

Note

In order to extend the life of this machine, periodically turn it on and use it. Storing this machine for an extended period of time without using it may reduce its efficiency.

Cleaning the machine surface

If the surface of the machine is dirty, lightly soak a cloth in neutral detergent, squeeze it out firmly, and then wipe the surface of the machine. After cleaning it once with a damp cloth, wipe it again with a dry cloth.

Cleaning the race

Sewing performance will suffer if dust collects in the bobbin case, therefore, it should be cleaned periodically.

1. Turn off the sewing machine.

2. Unplug the power cord from the power supply jack on the right side of the sewing machine.

3. Remove the flat bed attachment or the embroidery unit if either is attached.

4. Grasp both sides of the needle plate cover, and then slide it toward you.

CAUTION

- Unplug the power cord before cleaning the machine, otherwise injuries or an electric shock may occur.

- Unplug the power cord before cleaning the machine, otherwise injuries or an electric shock may occur.

- The needle plate cover is removed.
5 Remove the bobbin case.
Grasp the bobbin case, and then pull it out.

6 Use the cleaning brush or a vacuum cleaner to remove any lint and dust from the race and its surrounding area.

7 Insert the bobbin case so that the ▲ mark on the bobbin case aligns with the ● mark on the machine.

- Align the ▲ and ● marks.

8 Insert the tabs on the needle plate cover into the needle plate, and then slide the cover back on.

CAUTION
- Never use a bobbin case that is scratched, otherwise the upper thread may become tangled, the needle may break or sewing performance may suffer. For a new bobbin case (part code: XC3153-321 (green marking), XC8167-551 (no color on the screw)), contact your nearest authorized service center.
- Be sure that the bobbin case is correctly installed, otherwise the needle may break.
Troubleshooting

If the machine stops operating correctly, check the following possible problems before requesting service. You can solve most problems by yourself. If you need additional help, the Brother Solutions Center offers the latest FAQs and troubleshooting tips. Visit us at “http://support.brother.com”. If the problem persists, contact your dealer or the nearest authorized service center.

Frequent troubleshooting topics

Detailed causes and remedies for common troubleshooting topics are described below. Be sure to refer to this before contacting us.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Upper thread tightened up</td>
<td>page 186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tangled thread on wrong side of fabric</td>
<td>page 187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incorrect thread tension</td>
<td>page 189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fabric is caught in the machine and cannot be removed</td>
<td>page 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the thread became tangled under the bobbin winder seat</td>
<td>page 193</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Upper thread tightened up

**Symptom**
- The upper thread appears as a single continuous line.
- The lower thread is visible from the upper side of the fabric. (Refer to the illustration below.)
- The upper thread has tightened up, and comes out when pulled.
- The upper thread has tightened up, and wrinkles appear in the fabric.
- The upper thread tension is tight, and the results do not change even after the thread tension is adjusted.

**Cause**

**Incorrect lower threading**
If the lower thread is incorrectly threaded, instead of the appropriate tension being applied to the lower thread, it is pulled through the fabric when the upper thread is pulled up. For this reason, the thread is visible from the upper side of the fabric.

**Remedy/check details**

Correctly install the lower thread.

1. **Turn off the sewing machine.**
2. **Remove the bobbin from the bobbin case.**
3. **Place the bobbin in the bobbin case so that the thread unwinds in the correct direction.**

   - Hold the bobbin with your right hand with the thread unwinding to the left, and hold the end of the thread with your left hand. Then, with your right hand, place the bobbin in the bobbin case.

   ![Diagram](image-url)

   If the bobbin is inserted with the thread unwinding in the wrong direction, sewing will be done with an incorrect thread tension.
While holding the bobbin in place with your finger, pass the thread through the slit in the needle plate.

- Hold down the bobbin with your right hand, and then pull the end of the thread around the tab with your left hand.

While holding the bobbin, pass the thread through the slit in the needle plate.

Hold down the bobbin with your right hand, and then pull the end of the thread around the tab with your left hand.

Sewing with the correct thread tension is possible after the bobbin has been correctly installed in the bobbin case.

**Tangled thread on wrong side of fabric**

- **Symptom**
  - The thread becomes tangled on the lower side of the fabric.
  - After starting sewing, a rattling noise is made and sewing cannot continue.
  - Looking under the fabric, there is tangled thread in the bobbin case.

- **Cause**
  
  **Incorrect upper threading**
  
  If the upper thread is incorrectly threaded, the upper thread passed through the fabric cannot be firmly pulled up and the upper thread becomes tangled in the bobbin case, causing a rattling noise.

- **Remedy/check details**
  
  Remove the tangled thread, and then correct the upper threading.

1. **Remove the tangled thread. If it cannot be removed, cut the thread with scissors.**
   - For details, refer to “Cleaning the race” on page 184.

2. **Remove the upper thread from the machine.**

3. **Refer to the following steps to correct the upper threading.**
   - If the bobbin was removed from the bobbin case, refer to “Installing the bobbin” (page 29) and “Remedy/check details” in the section “Upper thread tightened up” (page 186) to correctly install the bobbin.
4. Raise the presser foot using the presser foot lever.

5. Press ("Needle Position" button) once or twice to raise the needle.

6. While holding the thread lightly with your right hand, pull the thread with your left hand, and then pass the thread behind the thread guide cover and to the front.

7. Pass the thread under the thread guide plate, and then pull it up.

8. While using your right hand to lightly hold the thread passed under the thread guide plate, pass the thread through the thread path in the order shown below.

9. Pass the thread behind the needle bar thread guide.

10. Next, use the needle threader to thread the needle. Continue with the procedure in “Threading the needle” (page 34).
Incorrect thread tension

■ Symptoms
- Symptom 1: The lower thread is visible from the upper side of the fabric.
- Symptom 2: The upper thread appears as a straight line on the upper side of the fabric.
- Symptom 3: The upper thread is visible from the lower side of the fabric.
- Symptom 4: The lower thread appears as a straight line on the lower side of the fabric.
- Symptom 5: The stitching on the lower side of the fabric is loose or has slack.

■ Cause/remedy/check details
- **Cause 1**
  The machine is not correctly threaded.
  <With symptoms 1 and 2 described above>
  The bobbin threading is incorrect. Return the upper thread tension to the standard setting, and then refer to “Upper thread tightened up” (page 186) to correct the threading.
  <With symptoms 3 through 5 described above>
  The upper threading is incorrect. Return the upper thread tension to the standard setting, and then refer to “Tangled thread on wrong side of fabric” (page 187) to correct the upper threading.

- **Cause 2**
  A needle and thread appropriate for the fabric are not being used.
  The sewing machine needle that should be used depends on the type of fabric sewn and the thread thickness.
  If a needle and thread appropriate for the fabric are not being used, the thread tension will not be adjusted correctly, causing wrinkles in the fabric or skipped stitches.
  - Refer to “Needle types and their uses” (page 41) to check that a needle and thread appropriate for the fabric are being used.

- **Cause 3**
  The setting selected for the upper thread tension is not appropriate.
  Refer to “Adjusting the thread tension” (page 59) to select an appropriate thread tension.
  The appropriate thread tension differs depending on the type of fabric and thread being used.

* Adjust the thread tension while test sewing on a piece of scrap fabric that is the same as that used in your project.

![Diagram](image)

- Symptom 1: Lower side of fabric (1), Upper thread visible from upper side of fabric (2), Upper side of fabric (3), Upper thread (4), Lower thread (5)
- Symptom 3: Lower thread visible from upper side of fabric (1), Upper thread (2), Upper side of fabric (3), Upper thread (4), Lower thread (5)

**Note**
- If the upper threading and bobbin threading are incorrect, the thread tension cannot be adjusted correctly. Check the upper threading and bobbin threading first, and then adjust the thread tension.

- If the bobbin thread is visible from the right side of the fabric
  Press [ ] in the operation panel to decrease the tension of the upper thread.

- If the upper thread is visible from the wrong side of the fabric
  Press [ ] in the operation panel to increase the tension of the upper thread.
Fabric is caught in the machine and cannot be removed

If the fabric is caught in the sewing machine and cannot be removed, the thread may have become tangled under the needle plate. Follow the procedure described below to remove the fabric from the machine. If the operation could not be completed according to the procedure, instead of attempting to complete it forcefully, contact your nearest authorized service center.

■ Removing the fabric from the machine

1. Immediately stop the sewing machine.
2. Turn off the sewing machine.
3. Remove the needle.
   - If the needle is lowered into the fabric, turn the handwheel away from you (clockwise) to raise the needle out of the fabric, and then remove the needle.
   - Refer to “Checking the needle” (page 42).
4. Remove the presser foot and presser foot holder.
   - Refer to “Replacing the Presser Foot” (page 44) and “Removing and attaching the presser foot holder” (page 46).
5. Lift up the fabric and cut the threads below it.
   - If the fabric can be removed, remove it. Continue with the following steps to clean the race.
6. Remove the needle plate cover.
   - Refer to “Cleaning the race” (page 184).
7. Cut out the tangled threads, and then remove the bobbin.
8. Remove the bobbin case.
   - If threads remain in the bobbin case, remove them.
9. Use the cleaning brush or a vacuum cleaner to remove any dust from the race and its surrounding area.

| If the fabric could be removed. | Continue with step 6. |
| If the fabric could not be removed. | Continue with step 10. |
10 Use the enclosed disc-shaped screwdriver to loosen the two screws on the needle plate.

![Image of screwdriver and needle plate]

**Note**
- Be careful not to drop the removed screws in the machine.

11 Slightly lift up the needle plate, cut any tangled threads, and then remove the needle plate. Remove the fabric and threads from the needle plate.

![Image of needle plate and threads]

If the fabric cannot be removed, even after completing these steps, contact your nearest authorized service center.

12 Remove any threads in the race and around the feed dogs.

13 Turn the handwheel to raise the feed dogs.

14 Align the two screw holes in the needle plate with the two holes at the needle plate mounting base, and then fit the needle plate onto the machine.

15 Lightly finger-tighten the screw on the right side of the needle plate. Then, use the disc-shaped screwdriver to firmly tighten the screw on the left side. Finally, firmly tighten the screw on the right side.

![Image of handwheel and needle plate]

Turn the handwheel to check that the feed dogs move smoothly and do not contact the edges of the slots in the needle plate.

![Correct and incorrect position of feed dogs]

**Note**
- Be careful not to drop the removed screws in the machine.

16 Insert the bobbin case so that the ▲ mark on the bobbin case aligns with the ● mark on the machine.

![Image of bobbin case and marks]

- Align the ▲ and ● marks.

- Make sure that the indicated points are aligned before installing the bobbin case.
CAUTION

Never use a bobbin case that is scratched, otherwise the upper thread may become tangled, the needle may break or sewing performance may suffer. For a new bobbin case (part code: XC3153-321 (green marking)), contact your nearest authorized service center.

Make sure that you fit the bobbin case properly, otherwise the needle may break.

Attach the needle plate cover according to steps 8 in “Cleaning the race” (page 185).

Check the condition of the needle, and then install it.

If the needle is in a poor condition, for example, if it is bent, be sure to install a new needle.

Refer to “Checking the needle” (page 42) and “Replacing the needle” (page 42).

CAUTION

Never use bent needles. Bent needles can easily break, possibly resulting in injuries.

Note

After completing this procedure, continue with the following procedure in “Checking machine operations” to check that the machine is operating correctly.

Memo

Since the needle may have been damaged when the fabric was caught in the machine, we recommend replacing it with a new one.

Checking machine operations

If the needle plate has been removed, check machine operations to confirm that installation has been completed correctly.

1. Turn on the machine.

2. Select stitch ③.

   Note

   Do not yet install the presser foot and thread.

3. Slowly turn the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise), and look from all sides to check that the needle falls at the center of the hole in the needle plate.

   If the needle contacts the needle plate, remove the needle plate, and then install it again, starting with step ⑧ in “Removing the fabric from the machine” (page 191).

4. Select stitch ⑦。 At this time, increase the stitch length and width to their maximum settings.

   For details on changing the settings, refer to “Adjusting the stitch width” (page 58) and “Adjusting the stitch length” (page 59).

5. Slowly turn the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) and check that the needle bar and feed dogs operate correctly.

   If the needle or feed dogs contact the needle plate, the machine may be malfunctioning; therefore, contact your nearest authorized service center.

6. Turn off the machine, and then install the bobbin and presser foot.

   Refer to “Installing the bobbin” (page 29) and “Replacing the presser foot” (page 44).
Correctly thread the machine.

- For details on threading the machine, refer to “Upper Threading” (page 31).

**Note**

- The thread may have become tangled as a result of incorrect upper threading. Make sure that the machine is correctly threaded.

Perform trial sewing with normal fabric.

**Note**

- Incorrect sewing may be the result of incorrect upper threading or sewing thin fabrics. If there are poor results from the trial sewing, check the upper threading or the type of fabric being used.

When the thread became tangled under the bobbin winder seat

If the bobbin winding starts when the thread is not passed under the pretension disk of the bobbin-winding thread guide correctly, the thread may become tangled under the bobbin winder seat. In such a case, wind off the thread according to the following procedure.

1. If the thread become tangled under the bobbin winder seat, press 1 (“Start/Stop” button) once to stop the bobbin winding. When the foot controller is plugged in, remove your foot from the foot controller.

   ![Illustration of bobbin winder with screw pointed out](image)

   ① Screw of the bobbin winder presser

2. Cut the thread with scissors beside the bobbin-winding thread guide.

   ![Illustration of bobbin winding thread guide with thread pointed out](image)

   ① Bobbin-winding thread guide

③ Thread
② Bobbin winder seat

**CAUTION**

- Do not remove the bobbin winder seat even if the thread become tangled under the bobbin winder seat. It may result in injuries.
- Do not remove the screw of the bobbin winder presser, otherwise the machine may be damaged; you cannot wind off the thread by removing the screw.
3. Slide the bobbin winder shaft to the left, and then remove the bobbin from the shaft.

4. Hold the thread end with your left hand, and wind off the thread clockwise near the bobbin with your right hand as shown below.

5. Wind the bobbin again.

**Note**
- Make sure that the thread passes under the pretension disk of the bobbin-winding thread guide correctly (page 27).
## List of symptoms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom</th>
<th>Probable Cause</th>
<th>Remedy</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>The sewing machine does not operate.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The machine is not turned on.</td>
<td>Turn on the machine.</td>
<td></td>
<td>page 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The “Start/Stop” button was not pressed.</td>
<td>Press the “Start/Stop” button.</td>
<td></td>
<td>page 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The presser foot lever is raised.</td>
<td>Lower the presser foot lever.</td>
<td></td>
<td>page 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The “Start/Stop” button was pressed, even though</td>
<td>Do not use the “Start/Stop” button when the foot controller is connected.</td>
<td>To use the “Start/Stop” button, disconnect the foot controller.</td>
<td>page 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the foot controller is connected.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The bobbin winder shaft is pushed to the right.</td>
<td>Move the bobbin winder shaft to the left.</td>
<td></td>
<td>page 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The needle breaks.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The needle is incorrectly installed.</td>
<td>Correctly install the needle.</td>
<td></td>
<td>page 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The needle clamp screw is loose.</td>
<td>Use the screwdriver to firmly tighten the screw.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The needle is bent or blunt.</td>
<td>Replace the needle.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The combination of fabric, thread and needle is</td>
<td>Select a thread and needle that are appropriate for the type of fabric being</td>
<td></td>
<td>page 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not correct.</td>
<td>sewn.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The presser foot that is used is not appropriate</td>
<td>Attach the presser foot that is appropriate for the type of stitch that you</td>
<td></td>
<td>page 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for the type of stitch that you wish to sew.</td>
<td>wish to sew.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The upper thread tension is too tight.</td>
<td>Loosen the upper thread tension.</td>
<td></td>
<td>page 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The fabric is pulled too much.</td>
<td>Lightly guide the fabric.</td>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The spool is incorrectly installed.</td>
<td>Correctly install the spool.</td>
<td></td>
<td>page 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The area around the hole in the needle plate is</td>
<td>Replace the needle plate. Contact your retailer or the nearest authorized</td>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scratched, or has a burr on it.</td>
<td>service center.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The area around the hole in the presser foot is</td>
<td>Replace the presser foot. Contact your retailer or the nearest authorized</td>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scratched, or has a burr on it.</td>
<td>service center.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The bobbin case is scratched, or has a burr on</td>
<td>Replace the bobbin case. Contact your retailer or the nearest authorized</td>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it.</td>
<td>service center.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A bobbin designed specifically for this machine</td>
<td>Incorrect bobbins will not work properly. Only use a bobbin designed</td>
<td></td>
<td>page 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is not used.</td>
<td>specifically for this machine.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptom</td>
<td>Probable Cause</td>
<td>Remedy</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The upper thread breaks.</td>
<td>The upper thread was not threaded correctly (for example, the spool is not installed correctly, the spool cap is too big for the spool being used, or the thread has come out of the needle bar thread guide).</td>
<td>Correct the upper threading.</td>
<td>page 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There are knots or tangles in the thread.</td>
<td>Remove any knots or tangles.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The selected needle is not appropriate for the thread being used.</td>
<td>Select a needle that is appropriate for the type of thread being used.</td>
<td>page 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The upper thread tension is too tight.</td>
<td>Loosen the upper thread tension.</td>
<td>page 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The thread is tangled, for example, in the bobbin case.</td>
<td>Remove the tangled thread. If the thread is tangled in the bobbin case, clean the race.</td>
<td>page 184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The needle is bent or blunt.</td>
<td>Replace the needle.</td>
<td>page 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The needle is incorrectly installed.</td>
<td>Correctly install the needle.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The area around the hole in the needle plate is scratched, or has a burr on it.</td>
<td>Replace the needle plate. Contact your retailer or the nearest authorized service center.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The area around the hole in the presser foot is scratched, or has a burr on it.</td>
<td>Replace the presser foot. Contact your retailer or the nearest authorized service center.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The bobbin case is scratched, or has a burr on it.</td>
<td>Replace the bobbin case. Contact your retailer or the nearest authorized service center.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A bobbin designed specifically for this machine is not used.</td>
<td>Incorrect bobbins will not work properly. Only use a bobbin designed specifically for this machine.</td>
<td>page 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bobbin thread does not wind neatly on the bobbin.</td>
<td>The thread that was pulled out was not wound onto the bobbin correctly.</td>
<td>Wind the thread that was pulled off around the bobbin five or six times clockwise.</td>
<td>page 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bobbin spins slowly.</td>
<td>Move the sewing speed controller to the right (so that the speed will be fast).</td>
<td>page 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptom</td>
<td>Probable Cause</td>
<td>Remedy</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The lower thread is tangled or breaks.</strong></td>
<td>The bobbin thread is incorrectly installed.</td>
<td>Correctly install the bobbin thread.</td>
<td>page 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The bobbin is scratched or does not rotate smoothly, or has a burr on it.</td>
<td>Replace the bobbin.</td>
<td>page 184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The thread is tangled.</td>
<td>Remove the tangled thread and clean the race.</td>
<td>page 184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A bobbin designed specifically for this machine is not used.</td>
<td>Incorrect bobbins will not work properly. Only use a bobbin designed specifically for this machine.</td>
<td>page 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The thread tension is incorrect.</strong></td>
<td>The upper thread was not threaded correctly.</td>
<td>Correct the upper threading.</td>
<td>page 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The bobbin thread is incorrectly installed.</td>
<td>Correctly install the bobbin thread.</td>
<td>page 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The combination of fabric, thread and needle is not correct.</td>
<td>Select a thread and needle that are appropriate for the type of fabric being sewn.</td>
<td>page 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The presser foot holder is incorrectly installed.</td>
<td>Correctly install the presser foot holder.</td>
<td>page 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The thread tension is incorrect.</td>
<td>Adjust the tension of the upper thread.</td>
<td>page 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A bobbin designed specifically for this machine is not used.</td>
<td>Incorrect bobbins will not work properly. Only use a bobbin designed specifically for this machine.</td>
<td>page 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The fabric is wrinkled.</strong></td>
<td>The upper thread was not threaded correctly, or the bobbin is incorrectly installed.</td>
<td>Correctly thread the upper thread and correctly install the bobbin thread.</td>
<td>page 29, page 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The spool is incorrectly installed.</td>
<td>Correctly install the spool.</td>
<td>page 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The combination of fabric, thread and needle is not correct.</td>
<td>Select a thread and needle that are appropriate for the type of fabric being sewn.</td>
<td>page 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The needle is bent or blunt.</td>
<td>Replace the needle.</td>
<td>page 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If thin fabrics are being sewn, the stitch is too long.</td>
<td>Shorten the stitch length or sew with stabilizer material under the fabric.</td>
<td>page 59, page 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The thread tension is incorrect.</td>
<td>Adjust the tension of the upper thread.</td>
<td>page 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptom</td>
<td>Probable Cause</td>
<td>Remedy</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stitches are skipped.</td>
<td>The upper thread was not threaded correctly.</td>
<td>Correct the upper threading.</td>
<td>page 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The combination of fabric, thread and needle is not correct.</td>
<td>Select a thread and needle that are appropriate for the type of fabric being sewn.</td>
<td>page 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The needle is bent or blunt.</td>
<td>Replace the needle.</td>
<td>page 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The needle is incorrectly installed.</td>
<td>Correctly install the needle.</td>
<td>page 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dust has accumulated under the needle plate or in the bobbin case.</td>
<td>Remove the needle plate cover and clean the race.</td>
<td>page 184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A high-pitched noise is made while sewing.</td>
<td>Dust has accumulated in the feed dogs or in the bobbin case.</td>
<td>Clean the race.</td>
<td>page 184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The upper thread was not threaded correctly.</td>
<td>Correct the upper threading.</td>
<td>page 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The bobbin case is scratched, or has a burr on it.</td>
<td>Replace the bobbin case. Contact your retailer or the nearest authorized service center.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A bobbin designed specifically for this machine is not used.</td>
<td>Incorrect bobbins will not work properly. Only use a bobbin designed specifically for this machine.</td>
<td>page 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The thread does not pass through the eye of the needle.</td>
<td>The needle has not been raised to the correct position.</td>
<td>Press the “Needle Position” button.</td>
<td>page 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The needle is incorrectly installed.</td>
<td>Correctly install the needle.</td>
<td>page 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The stitch is not sewn correctly.</td>
<td>The presser foot that is used is not appropriate for the type of stitch that you wish to sew.</td>
<td>Attach the presser foot that is appropriate for the type of stitch that you wish to sew.</td>
<td>page 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The thread tension is incorrect.</td>
<td>Adjust the tension of the upper thread.</td>
<td>page 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The thread is tangled, for example, in the bobbin case.</td>
<td>Remove the tangle thread. If the thread is tangled in the bobbin case, clean the race.</td>
<td>page 184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The fabric does not feed.</td>
<td>The feed dogs are lowered.</td>
<td>Slide the drop feed lever to the right (as seen from the rear of machine).</td>
<td>page 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The stitch is too short.</td>
<td>Lengthen the stitch length.</td>
<td>page 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The presser foot that is used is not appropriate for the type of stitch that you wish to sew.</td>
<td>Attach the presser foot that is appropriate for the type of stitch that you wish to sew.</td>
<td>page 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The thread is tangled, for example, in the bobbin case.</td>
<td>Remove the tangled thread. If the thread is tangled in the bobbin case, clean the race.</td>
<td>page 184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zigzag foot “J” is slanted on a thick seam at the beginning of stitching.</td>
<td>Use the presser foot locking pin (black button on the left side) on zigzag foot “J” to keep the presser foot level while sewing.</td>
<td>page 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptom</td>
<td>Probable Cause</td>
<td>Remedy</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The sewing lamp does not come on.</td>
<td>The sewing lamp is damaged.</td>
<td>Contact your retailer or the nearest authorized service center.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The machine is not turned on.</td>
<td>Turn on the machine.</td>
<td>page 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nothing appears in the LCD.</td>
<td>The brightness of the LCD is either too light or too dark.</td>
<td>Adjust the brightness of the LCD.</td>
<td>page 204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machine does not operate when button is pressed.</td>
<td>An animation is displayed on the LCD.</td>
<td>Touch the LCD with your finger, and the animation will disappear.</td>
<td>page 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embroidery unit does not move.</td>
<td>No pattern selected.</td>
<td>Select a pattern.</td>
<td>page 159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The embroidery unit is not set up correctly.</td>
<td>Set the embroidery unit up correctly.</td>
<td>page 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The fabric is not fully stretched on the embroidery frame. The fabric is loose.</td>
<td>Stretch the fabric properly on the embroidery frame.</td>
<td>page 154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No stabilizer material is attached.</td>
<td>Always use stabilizer material for embroidery with stretch fabrics, thin fabrics, fabrics with a loose weave and fabrics where stitches easily contract.</td>
<td>page 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The thread is tangled and the bobbin case, etc., is plugged up.</td>
<td>Remove the tangled thread. When the bobbin case is plugged up, clean the race.</td>
<td>page 184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The thread tension is incorrect.</td>
<td>Adjust the tension of the upper thread.</td>
<td>page 173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Objects are placed near the carriage or embroidery frame.</td>
<td>If the embroidery unit carriage or embroidery frame bumps into objects, the pattern will be misaligned. Do not place objects within the range of embroidery frame motion.</td>
<td>page 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Material coming out of the embroidery frame is causing problems.</td>
<td>Stretch the fabric on the frame once again so that the material coming out of the embroidery frame does not cause problems, rotate the pattern and embroider.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A heavy fabric is being embroidered, and the fabric is hanging off the table.</td>
<td>If embroidery is done with the fabric hanging off the table, the embroidery unit movement will be impaired. Support the fabric while embroidering.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The fabric is catching. It is pinched.</td>
<td>Stop the sewing machine and set the fabric up correctly.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The carriage was moved while the embroidery frame was being removed or attached during embroidery.</td>
<td>If the carriage is moved during the process, the pattern may be misaligned. Be careful when removing or attaching the embroidery frame.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptom</td>
<td>Probable Cause</td>
<td>Remedy</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>While winding the bobbin, the bobbin thread was wound below the bobbin winder seat.</td>
<td>You have not wound the bobbin thread properly.</td>
<td>After removing the thread wound below the bobbin winder seat, wind the bobbin correctly.</td>
<td>page 193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bobbin thread does not wind neatly on the bobbin.</td>
<td>The thread is not passed through the bobbin-winding thread guide correctly.</td>
<td>Correctly pass the thread through the bobbin-winding thread guide.</td>
<td>page 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bobbin spins slowly.</td>
<td>Move the sewing speed controller to the right (so that the speed will be fast).</td>
<td>page 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The thread that was pulled out was not wound onto the bobbin correctly.</td>
<td>Wind the thread that was pulled off round the bobbin five or six times clockwise.</td>
<td>page 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fabric being sewn with the machine cannot be removed.</td>
<td>Thread is tangled below the needle plate.</td>
<td>Lift up the fabric and cut the threads below it, and clean the race.</td>
<td>page 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The fabric feeds in the opposite direction.</td>
<td>The feed mechanism is damaged.</td>
<td>Contact your dealer or the nearest authorized service center.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The upper thread has tightened up.</td>
<td>The bobbin thread is incorrectly installed.</td>
<td>Correctly install the bobbin thread.</td>
<td>page 29, page 186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The thread is tangled on the wrong side of the fabric.</td>
<td>You have not threaded the upper thread properly.</td>
<td>Correct the upper threading.</td>
<td>page 32, page 187</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Error messages

When erroneous operations are performed messages and advice on operation will be displayed on the LCD. Follow what is displayed. The message may disappear if the operation is performed correctly. The message will disappear if [CLOSE] is pressed while the message is displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Probable Cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![checkmark] Can not recognize the data. The data may be corrupted.</td>
<td>There is a possibility that the data for the selected pattern is corrupted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![checkmark] Cannot sew on this screen.</td>
<td>Either the “Start/Stop” button or the “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button was pressed at a screen other than the sewing screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![checkmark] Change the speed controller mode to “OFF”.</td>
<td>The “Start/Stop” button was pressed without connecting the foot controller while the setting for adjusting the stitch width using the sewing speed controller is set to “ON” (Refer to page 111). You have selected a pattern for which width control cannot be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![checkmark] Change to the single needle mode, and replace the needle.</td>
<td>The twin needle setting is selected while a pattern that cannot be sewn with the twin needle is selected. Press [CANCEL] to cancel the twin needle setting. If the twin needle is installed, replace it with a single needle. Then, select the pattern again. Press [CANCEL] to return to the previous screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![checkmark] Check and rethread the upper thread.</td>
<td>Upper thread broken. Upper thread not set up correctly. Upper thread has run out. CAUTION Be sure to rethread the machine. If you press the “Start/Stop” button without rethreading the machine, the thread tension may be wrong or the needle may break and cause injury.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![checkmark] Data volume is too large for this pattern.</td>
<td>You tried to create a design with too many points with the My Custom Stitch function. Deleting... The machine is deleting a previously saved pattern while in embroidery edit mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![checkmark] Disconnect the foot controller.</td>
<td>The “Start/Stop” button was pressed while the foot controller was connected. You tried to use the foot controller for embroidery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![checkmark] Do not change the USB media while it is being read.</td>
<td>You attempted to select a pattern after the USB media containing the pattern has been disconnected, then reconnected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![checkmark] Finish editing the pattern before sewing the pattern.</td>
<td>The “Start/Stop” button was pressed before the editing was completed with the My custom stitch function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![checkmark] Insert an embroidery card.</td>
<td>![insert_card] on the LCD was pressed when no card was inserted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error Message</td>
<td>Probable Cause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift the buttonhole lever.</td>
<td>A stitch other than the buttonhole, bar tack or darning stitch was selected and the “Start/Stop” button was pressed while the buttonhole lever is lowered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load USB media.</td>
<td>You recalled a pattern while no USB media is connected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower the buttonhole lever.</td>
<td>The buttonhole, bar tack or darning stitch was selected and the “Start/Stop” button was pressed while the buttonhole lever is raised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower the presser foot lever.</td>
<td>The “Start/Stop” button, “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button or “Thread Cutter” button was pressed while the presser foot was raised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No more stitches can be combined.</td>
<td>You tried to combine more than 70 decorative stitches, satin stitches, cross stitches or combined utility stitches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not enough available memory. Delete another pattern?</td>
<td>The memory is full and the stitch or pattern cannot be saved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OK to delete the selected pattern?</td>
<td>You pressed the back key or the utility stitch key or the embroidery key while a pattern was selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OK to save the current settings?</td>
<td>You changed the stitch pattern settings, and then tried to save them by pressing the manual memory key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press the needle position button to raise the needle.</td>
<td>You tried to select an embroidery pattern or change the layout when the needle was down. The machine is turned on while the needle is lowered and the embroidery unit is attached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raise presser foot lever.</td>
<td>This message is displayed when the embroidery unit is trying to initialize while the embroidery foot is lowered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduce the number of patterns.</td>
<td>A pattern was being retrieved from a USB flash drive (USB flash memory) containing more than 200 embroidery patterns. In addition, this message will appear if embroidery patterns containing many colors have been saved on the USB media, even if it contains data for no more than 200 patterns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrieving the pattern. Wait a moment.</td>
<td>Retrieving the pattern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Return the bobbin winding shaft to left.</td>
<td>The “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button, “Needle Position” button or “Thread Cutter” button was pressed while the bobbin winder shaft is moved to the right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saving...</td>
<td>A pattern is being saved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error Message</td>
<td>Probable Cause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔴 Select a pattern.</td>
<td>The “Start/Stop” button or “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button was pressed when no pattern is selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔴 The bobbin thread is running out.</td>
<td>Bobbin thread has run out. Little bobbin thread remains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔴 The carriage of the embroidery unit will move.</td>
<td>When the embroidery unit is attached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔴 The pattern is too large for the embroidery frame.</td>
<td>You tried to set a number of characters that will not fit within the frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔴 The safety device has been activated.</td>
<td>The upper thread has become tangled around the bobbin case, and the needle is bent and hitting the needle plate, etc., so the sewing machine stops (refer to page 186).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔴 This button does not operate when the embroidery unit is attached.</td>
<td>You tried a function that cannot be used when the embroidery unit is attached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔴 This embroidery card can not be used on this machine.</td>
<td>A card that cannot be used with this product has been inserted, and you tried to select a pattern from the card.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔴 This embroidery pattern can not be used on this machine.</td>
<td>An embroidery pattern incompatible with this machine was selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔴 This key does not operate when the embroidery unit is attached.</td>
<td>The utility stitch or character stitch key was pressed while the embroidery unit is attached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔴 This pattern cannot be used.</td>
<td>You try to retrieve a pattern downloaded as one for a different machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔴 Total size of the pattern is too large. Rotate the pattern.</td>
<td>The machine is in embroidery mode and the combined character pattern is too large for the embroidery frame. You can rotate the pattern 90 degrees and continue combining characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔴 Turn off the machine, and attach the embroidery unit.</td>
<td>The “Start/Stop” button, the embroidery key, or the memory key is pressed in embroidery mode, but the embroidery unit is not attached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winding bobbin thread...</td>
<td>The bobbin winder is winding the bobbin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F01-F07</td>
<td>If error message “F01” through “F07” appears in the LCD while the sewing machine is being used, the machine may be malfunctioning. Contact your nearest authorized service center.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Adjusting the LCD

If nothing appears in the LCD when the sewing machine is turned on, the brightness of the LCD is either too light or too dark. In such a case, perform the following operation.

1. Turn off the sewing machine.

2. Turn on the sewing machine while pressing anywhere on the screen.

3. Press \(-\) or \(+\).

4. Turn off the sewing machine, then turn it on again.

Operation beep

Each time a key is pressed you will hear one beep. If an incorrect operation is performed you will hear two or four beeps.

- **If a key is pressed (correct operation)**
  One beep sounds.

- **If an incorrect operation is performed**
  Two or four beeps sound.

- **If the machine locks up, for example, because the thread is tangled**
  The sewing machine beeps for four seconds and the machine automatically stops.
  Be sure to check for the cause of the error, and correct it before continuing to sew.
Canceling the operation beep

When the sewing machine is purchased, it is set to beep each time an operation panel key is pressed. This setting can be changed so that the machine does not beep.

1. **Turn on the sewing machine.**

   ▶ The LCD comes on.

2. **Press (Settings key) on the operation panel.**

   ▶ The settings screen appears.

3. **Press (Next page key) three times.**

4. **Press OFF for the buzzer.**

   ▶ The screen for changing the beep setting appears.

5. **Press (Back key).**

   ▶ The initial screen appears again.
Upgrading Your Machine's Software Using USB Media

You can use USB media and a computer to download software upgrades for your sewing machine. When an upgrade program is available on our website at “http://support.brother.com”, please download the file(s) following the instructions on the website and steps listed below.

**Note**
- When using USB media to upgrade the software, check that no data other than the upgrade file is saved on the USB media being used before starting to upgrade.
- Upgrade file can be recalled from a USB flash drive (USB flash memory) of any size.

**Memo**
- When the machine's software is upgraded, saved combinations of character and decorative stitches are erased. However, saved embroidery patterns are not erased.

1. Press and hold the (Settings key) while turning on the machine.
   - The following screen appears.
   
   ![Connect the USB media containing the upgrade file.]

2. Insert the USB media into the USB port on the machine. The media device should only contain the upgrade file.

3. Press LOAD.
   - The following screen appears.
   
   ![Saving the upgrade file. Do not turn main power to OFF.]

4. When the following screen appears, upgrading is completed.

5. Remove the USB media, and turn the machine off and on again.
appliqué pattern selection .................14
bobbin threading ..................................12, 108
appliqué stitch ......................................12
buttonhole stitching ...............................12
bobbin thread, pulling up .......................101
adjustable zipper/piping foot .................12
adjusting stitch length .........................12
adjusting stitch width ............................12
adjusting thread tension .......................12
air vent ............................................12
alternate bobbin case .........................12
appliqué ...........................................12
appliqué pattern selection ....................12
appliqué stitch ....................................12
attaching presser foot holder .................12
attaching stabilizer material .................12
attributes ..........................................12
automatic reverse/reinforcement stitches ....12
automatic thread cutting .......................12

B

back key ...........................................12
bar tack stitch ....................................12
basic sewing .......................................12
basic stitching ....................................12
basting stitch ....................................12
beep ................................................12
blind hem stitch ..................................12
bobbin .............................................12
bobbin case .......................................12
bobbin case removal .........................12
bobbin cover ......................................12
bobbin installation ...............................12
bobbin thread, pulling up .....................12
bobbin threading .................................12
bobbin winder ...................................12
bobbin winding ..................................12
bobbin winding thread guide and pretension disk ..12
button guide plate ................................12
button sewing ....................................12
buttonhole lever ..................................12
buttonhole sewing ...............................12
buttonhole stitching .............................12
buzzer ............................................12

C
care ................................................12
changing sewing direction ....................12
character stitches ...............................12
character storage ................................12
characters, retrieving .........................12
checking needle ................................12
cleaning bobbin case .........................12
cleaning brush ..................................12
cleaning machine surface .....................12
combining patterns .............................12
concealed seams ................................12
country thread ..................................12
crazy quilt stitching .........................12
cross stitches ....................................12
cutting thread ....................................12
cutting thread automatically .............12

D
darning ............................................12
darning stitch .....................................12
decorative satin stitches ......................12
decorative stitches & patterns .............12
deleting saved pattern .......................12
design examples .................................12
designing stitch patterns ....................12

e
elastic tape .......................................12
embroidering ....................................12
embroidering pattern .........................12
embroidering steps ............................12
embroidery bobbin thread ....................12
embroidery card slot ............................12
embroidery cards ...............................12
embroidery character selection ..........12
embroidery data ................................12
embroidery fabric preparation ..........12
embroidery foot installation ..............12
embroidery foot removal .....................12
embroidery frame ...............................12
embroidery frame installation ..........12
embroidery frame removal ..................12
embroidery key ..................................12
embroidery pattern selection ............12
embroidery pattern types ........................12
embroidery sets ................................12
embroidery sheets ..............................12
embroidery threads .............................12
embroidery unit connector slot ..........12
embroidery unit installation ................12
embroidery unit removal ......................12
error messages ..................................12
even seam allowance .........................12
examples of designs ............................12
extra spool pin ..................................12
eyelet punch ....................................12
eyelet stitching ..................................12

Upgrading Your Machine’s Software / Index 207
| F | Needle bar thread guide ........................................ 14 |
|   | needle condition .................................................. 42 |
|   | needle plate ....................................................... 14 |
|   | needle plate cover ................................................ 14 |
|   | needle plate marking .............................................. 67 |
|   | needle position button .......................................... 15 |
|   | needle position, changing ...................................... 86 |
|   | needle replacement ............................................... 42 |
|   | needle set ................................................................ 11 |
|   | needle threader ...................................................... 34 |
|   | needle threader lever ............................................. 13 |
|   | needle threading .................................................... 34 |
|   | needle types, sizes & uses ...................................... 41 |
|   | needles ................................................................... 40 |
|   | next page key ......................................................... 16 |
|   | non stick foot ....................................................... 11, 66 |
| G | general sewing procedures ..................................... 50 |
|   | grid sheet set ......................................................... 11 |
| H | handle .................................................................... 14 |
|   | handwheel .............................................................. 14 |
|   | hard case .................................................................. 11 |
|   | heirloom stitching .................................................. 125 |
|   | help key ................................................................ 16, 23 |
|   | horizontal stitching ................................................. 118 |
| I | inserting a piping ................................................... 102 |
|   | installing bobbin ..................................................... 29 |
| J | joining .................................................................... 124 |
|   | joining stitch .......................................................... 105, 120 |
| K | knee lifter ............................................................... 11, 67 |
|   | knee lifter mounting slot ........................................... 13, 67 |
| L | layout adjustment .................................................. 171 |
|   | LCD ........................................................................ 16, 160 |
|   | LCD button .............................................................. 161 |
|   | LCD messages .......................................................... 201 |
|   | LCD operation .......................................................... 20, 160 |
|   | leather/vinyl fabrics ................................................. 66 |
| M | machine surface cleaning ....................................... 184 |
|   | main power switch ................................................... 14, 19 |
|   | maintenance ................................................................ 184 |
|   | manual needle threading ......................................... 35 |
|   | memory key .............................................................. 16 |
|   | mirroring stitches .................................................... 63 |
|   | My Custom Stitch ..................................................... 139 |
| N | open toe foot .......................................................... 11 |
|   | operation beep .......................................................... 204 |
|   | operation buttons ..................................................... 13, 15, 53 |
|   | operation keys .......................................................... 16, 160 |
|   | operation panel ........................................................ 13, 16 |
|   | operation problems ................................................... 186 |
|   | operations ................................................................ 23 |
|   | optional accessories ............................................... 12 |
|   | overcasting stitches .................................................. 81, 82 |
| O | pant legs ................................................................... 47 |
|   | parallel stitches ....................................................... 36 |
|   | part names & functions ............................................. 13 |
|   | patchwork ............................................................... 105, 107 |
|   | pattern combinations ............................................... 132 |
|   | pattern embroidery .................................................. 167 |
|   | pattern realignment .................................................. 136 |
|   | pattern repetition ..................................................... 133 |
|   | pattern retrieving ..................................................... 135 |
|   | pattern sewing .......................................................... 128 |
|   | pattern size ................................................................ 129 |
|   | pattern storage ........................................................ 135 |
|   | pattern, deleting ...................................................... 136 |
|   | piecing ................................................................... 107 |
|   | piecing straight stitch .............................................. 105 |
|   | piping inserting ....................................................... 102 |
|   | plug ....................................................................... 19 |
|   | positioning fabric .................................................... 52 |
|   | power cord, jack, switch & supply ............................ 19 |
|   | power supply jack ..................................................... 14 |
|   | power switch ........................................................... 14 |
|   | preparations for embroidering .................................. 144 |
|   | presser foot .............................................................. 14 |
|   | presser foot holder ................................................... 14 |
|   | presser foot holder installation ................................ 46 |
|   | presser foot holder removal ..................................... 46 |
|   | presser foot lever ..................................................... 13, 14 |
|   | presser foot pressure dial ....................................... 14 |
|   | presser foot replacement ......................................... 44 |
|   | previous page key ..................................................... 16 |
|   | pulling up bobbin thread ....................................... 39 |
Q

quiet reference guide ........................................11
quilt stitching ..................................................105
quilting ..........................................................109
quilting foot ......................................................12
quilting guide ...................................................12, 110
quilting stippling ................................................105
quilting stitch ...................................................105

R

race .................................................................184
realigning pattern .............................................136
reinforcement stitching ....................................55, 113
release button ..................................................152
removing presser foot holder ..............................46
repeating patterns .............................................133
replacing needle ...............................................42
replacing presser foot ........................................44
re-feeding .......................................................175
retrieving pattern .............................................135
reverse stitching ...............................................55
reverse/reinforcement stitch button ..................15, 55
reverse/reinforcement stitches, automatic ..........61

S

safety instructions ............................................1
satin stitch length, changing ...............................130
satin stitches ..................................................77, 128
satin stitching ..................................................111
saving patterns ...............................................135, 180
scalloped stitch ...............................................120
scalloped stitching ..........................................122
scissors ............................................................11
screwdriver .....................................................11
seam allowance, even .......................................66
seam ripper .....................................................11, 92
securing stitching ............................................55
selecting embroidery patterns ............................159
selecting stitches .............................................51, 70, 77
settings key .....................................................16
sewing basics ..................................................50
sewing direction change ...................................64
sewing machine help key ..................................16
sewing speed controller ..................................13, 15, 53, 112
shell stitch ....................................................120, 123
side cutter .......................................................83
size .................................................................129
smocking .........................................................122
smocking stitch ...............................................120
solving operation problems ..............................186
spool cap ........................................................11
spool net .........................................................11, 27
spool of thread ...............................................31
spool pin ..........................................................11
stabilizer material ............................................153
start/stop button .............................................15, 53
step pattern .....................................................131
stippling ........................................................105
stitch density ...................................................105
stitch guide foot .............................................11, 66
stitch length adjustment ..................................59
stitch selection ..............................................51, 70, 77
stitch settings ..................................................70
stitch type selection screen ..............................20
stitch types .....................................................77
stitch width adjustment ..................................58
stopping embroidering ....................................176
straight stitch ...............................................70, 85, 96, 107
stretch fabrics ...............................................66, 103
stretch stitch ..................................................103

T

thick fabrics ...................................................65
thin fabrics .....................................................66
thread cutter ..................................................13, 57
thread cutter button ........................................15, 56
thread cutting ...............................................15, 56
thread cutting, automatic ................................62
thread guide cover ..........................................13
thread guide disk ............................................14
thread guide plate ..........................................13
thread spools ...............................................31
thread tension adjustment ..............................59, 173
Threading .........................................................32
threading bobbin ............................................29
threading needle ............................................34
threading needle manually ................................35
tips .................................................................64
top cover .........................................................13
touch panel .....................................................16
trial sewing .....................................................64
triple stretch stitch .........................................85, 113
troubleshooting .............................................186
turning machine on/off .....................................19
twin needle .....................................................11, 36
twin needle sewing ..........................................18

U

upgrading ..........................................................206
upper thread ...................................................31
upper thread spool ..........................................31
upper tension ...............................................60
USB flash drive (USB flash memory)..................181
USB port connector .........................................14
utility stitch key .............................................16
utility stitch selection screen ...........................20
utility stitches ...............................................70, 77

W

walking foot .....................................................12
winding bobbin ...............................................25
wing needle ....................................................125

Z

zigzag stitches ..............................................82, 103, 105
zigzag width adjustment ..................................58
zipper sewing ...............................................96
zipper stitching .............................................101
Please visit us at http://support.brother.com where you can get product support and answers to frequently asked questions (FAQs).